MIDDLE HIGH GERMAN SERIES · VOLUME 23

The Eneit

Heinrich von Veldeke

Die Êneide

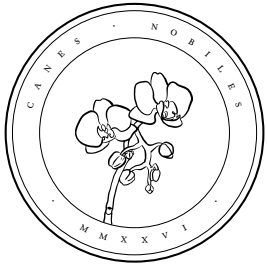
The Eneit

Part Two: Lavinia and the War in Latium

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

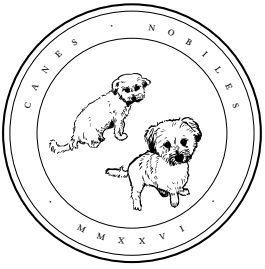


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 23 of the Canes Nobiles Middle High German interlinear texts

The Middle High German text follows Heinrich von Veldeke, herausgegeben von Ludwig Ettmüller, Dichtungen des deutschen Mittelalters 8 (Leipzig: G. J. Göschen, 1852), verses 6838 to 13528

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

The verses are numbered as Otto Behaghel numbers them (1882), every fifth verse in the outer margin; Ettmüller counts his lines by the page. A verse Ettmüller prints that Behaghel does not count is lettered after the verse before it, and a number Behaghel gives to a line Ettmüller does not print is passed over. The paragraphs are Ettmüller's, each opened in his text by a bold initial; the reading sections and their English heads are this press's.

CONTENTS

XXX · The Siege of the Trojan Fort 7
XXXI · Pandarus and Bitias 21
XXXII · Pallas Falls 35
XXXIII · Turnus Carried Off to Sea 52
XXXIV · Mezentius and Lausus 65
XXXV · The Lament for Pallas 81
XXXVI · The Tomb of Pallas, and Latinus's Counsel 96
XXXVII · Drances Against Turnus 112
XXXVIII · Camilla and the Ambush 126
XXXIX · Camilla's Death 141

XL · Dido's Tent, and Camilla's Bier 154
XLI · Camilla's Tomb, and the Combat Agreed 171
XLII · The Queen Teaches Lavinia of Love 187
XLIII · Lavinia Struck by Love 203
XLIV · Lavinia's Night of Love-Sickness 216
XLV · The Name on the Tablet 232
XLVI · The Letter on the Arrow 248
XLVII · Aeneas Struck by Love 258
XLVIII · Aeneas's Night 275
XLIX · Lavinia's Doubt 290
L · The Oaths, and the Broken Truce 304
LI · Aeneas Wounded 320
LII · Turnus Routed, and Lavinia's Tokens 334
LIII · The Duel 349
LIV · Turnus's Death, and the Wedding Set 365
LV · Aeneas Visits Lavinia 379
LVI · The Wedding 396
LVII · Aeneas's Line, and the Poet's Epilogue 410

The Siege of the Trojan Fort

XXX

Turnus orders the ditch filled and the Trojan fort stormed. The defenders burn the attackers' bundles before they reach the trench and fight back from the battlements, and Ascanius shames them into holding. Turnus's men burn the siege-tower on the bridge with oil, and its twelve defenders die when it falls, all but Helenor and Lycus: Helenor kills ten before Turnus slays him, and Lycus is speared in the ditch. Ascanius shoots Turnus's brother-in-law Romulus through the heart for his taunts.

der hêre Turnûs dô gebôt
the lord Turnus then commanded

in dem here uber al
in the host over all

uber berch und uber tal
over hill and over dale

und hiez sagen mâre,
and bade tell tidings,

swer sô sîn frunt wâre
whoever so his friend were

und sîner minne rûchte,
and of-his love cared,

daz her die borch sûchte,
that he the castle should-seek,

her wolde fullen den graben,
he would fill the ditch,

oder her worde dar abe
or he should-become there off

mit den swerden geslagen.
with the swords slain.

dô wart dâ manich stark wagen
then was there many-a strong wagon

zû getriben al geladen.
to driven all loaded.

jenen wolden sie schaden,
those would they harm,

die der borch phlâgen.
who the castle kept.

dô si daz ersâgen,
when they that saw,

do geschûfen si ouch ir were,
then made they also their defense,

want si gesâgen daz here
for they saw that host

wâfen unde rûren
arm and stir

unde dar zû fûren
and there to carry

vile grôze gedraht.
very great bundles.

ê dan siz worfen in die graht
ere than they-it threw into the trench

und ê siz mohten gelegen,
and ere they-it might lay,

sô heten sie ouch dar engegen
so had they also there against

geschaffet ir gewarheit.
made their wariness.

daz fûre heten si vil gereit
the fire had they very ready

unde dar zû ir gerech,
and there to their gear,

smalz, swebel unde bech,
lard, sulfur and pitch,

die gedraht si branden
the bundles they burned

under ir handen.
under their hands.

die ez dar zû trûgen,
who it there to carried,

vil si der erslûgen.
many they of-them slew.

Dô Turnô bedohte,
When Turnus considered,

daz die graben ne mohten
that the ditches — might

niht gefullet werden,
not filled become,

dô hiez her sie mit erden
then bade he them with earth

fullen unde slihten.
fill and level.

mangen hiezer rihten,
mangonels bade-he set-up,

seilen unde mannen,
rope and man,

und ebenhôhen spannen
and siege-towers stretch

und hiez die trîben dar zô.
and bade them drive thither to.

die Troiâre wânder dô
the Trojans weened-he then

alle schiere haben tôt.
all quickly have dead.

den schutzen her gebôt
to-the archers he commanded

beidiu gebôt unde bat,
both commanded and asked,

her fûrde sie an eine stat,
he led them to a place,

her tete in rede gûte
he did to-them speech good

mit fruntlîchem mûte
with friendly spirit

6885 und bat si vaste schiezen,
and asked them firmly shoot,

daz si der ne liezen
that they of-them — let

deheinen leben noch genesen,
none live nor survive,

die an den zinnen wolden wesen
who on the battlements would be

und dâ stunden ze were,
and there stood in defense,

6890 und bat allez daz here,
and asked all the host,

daz si ze storme wolden gân.
that they to assault would go.

daz wart schiere alsô getân,
that was quickly so done,

als wir û wol gesagen mogen.
as we to-you well tell may.

vile dikke dâ flogen
very often there flew

6895 schefte unde phîle
shafts and arrows

eine lange wîle
a long while

unde materelle
and quarrels

grôz unde snelle
great and swift

unde scharphe gêre.
and sharp spears.

dô trûgens sêre,
then bore-they sorely,

die den graben solden weren:
who the ditch should defend:

sine mohten sich drûf niht generen,
they might themselves thereon not save,

von den zinnen man si treib,
from the battlements one them drove,

daz ir luzel drane bleib,
that of-them few thereon remained,

si mûsten sich bergen.
they must themselves shelter.

niewan die halsberge
save who hauberks

und îsen ane trûgen,
and iron on wore,

die schozzen unde slûgen.
they shot and slew.

doch wart ir sô vile wunt,
yet became of-them so many wounded,

daz si dô zû der stunt
that they then at the hour

mit gewalde solden în gân,
with force should in go,

wan daz der edile Troiân,
but that the noble Trojan,

Ascânjus der junge man,
Ascanius the young man,

die helide trôsten began.
the heroes to-comfort began.

Dô sprach der helt mâre,
Then spoke the hero famous,

daz ez noch arger wâre,
that it still worse were,

daz si mit schanden storben
that they with disgrace died

danne si rûm erworben
than they glory won

unde wolden wol genesen.
and would well recover.

die dâ gûte knehte wolden wesen,
who there good knights would be,

der nande her sô vil mit namen,
of-them named he so many by name,

daz si sich alle begonden schamen,
that they themselves all began to-be-ashamed,

ez wâre in leit oder gemach.
it were to-them grievous or ease.

sô vil her in zû sprach
so much he to-them to spoke

den alden und den jungen,
to-the old and to-the young,

daz si her vor sprungen
that they forth before sprang

unde jene enphiengen,
and those received,

die dâ ze storme giengen.
who there to assault went.

als ich die rede hân vernomen,
as I the tale have heard,

ir was ein michel teil komen
of-them was a great part come

zû den zinnen vile nâ,
to the battlements very near,

dô widerstunden sie in dâ
then withstood they them there

alse gûte knehte.
as good knights.

dâ golden sie in rehte
there repaid they them rightly

daz si unschuldich wâren
that they innocent were

mit blîkolben swâren.
with lead-clubs heavy.

sine spareten ir neheinen.
they spared of-them none.

mit grôzen lâzsteinen
with great sling-stones

qualten sie si âne zal,
tormented they them without number,

die den graben al ze tal
who the ditch all to dale

tôt walzeten hin nider:
dead rolled thither down:

sine quâmen nimmer dar wider.
they came never thither back.

Der storm was vile grôz.
The assault was very great.

beidenthalben man schôz
on-both-sides one shot

beidiu ûf unde nider.
both up and down.

dâ flogen vort unde wider
there flew forth and back

die phîle dikker danne ein regen.
the arrows thicker than a rain.

Ascânjûs der junge degen
Ascanius the young warrior

getrôste sînes vater man.
comforted his father's men.

grôz arbeit her des gewan.
great hardship he of-it won.

her schûf daz sie sich wereten
he brought-about that they themselves defended

und den lîb genereten
and the body saved

vor ir vîanden.
from their enemies.

si dahten wol zen handen,
they took-thought well to-the hands,

si slûgen unde stâchen,
they slew and stabbed,

die halse si in brâchen,
the necks they to-them broke,

die arme und die rucke.
the arms and the backs.

dô was uber die brucke
then was over the bridge

ein berfrit hô gespannen,
a siege-tower high stretched,

daz was zwelif mannen
that was to-twelve men

bestatet unde bevolen,
furnished and entrusted,

die mûsten angest dâ dolen,
who must fear there suffer,

dô man si stormen began.
when one them to-storm began.

dar ûffe wâren zwêne man,
there upon were two men,

zwêne ritter gûte,
two knights good,

den dâ diu hûte
to-whom there the guard

allermeist bevolen was.
most-of-all entrusted was.

den getrouwete Ênêas
them trusted Aeneas

wol, dô her si dâ liez.
well, when he them there left.

Lîcûs der eine hiez
Lycus the one was-called

und der ander Helenôr.
and the other Helenor.

dem het der hêre Hectôr
to-whom had the lord Hector

wâfen unde swert gegeven.
arms and sword given.

si wâren beide geneven
they were both cousins

Helenôr unde Lîke
Helenor and Lycus

zwêne ritter hêrlîke.
two knights lordly.

Die lieben hûsgenôze
The dear house-fellows

heten sorge grôze,
had care great,

Helenôr und Lîcûs,
Helenor and Lycus,

die dâ wâren ûf dem wîchûs,
who there were on the tower,

und ander Ênêases man,
and other Aeneas's men,

dô man si sûchen began.
when one them to-seek began.

dô ir Turnûs wart gewar,
when of-them Turnus became aware,

des heres leiter vile dar
of-the host led-he many thither

bî der brucke an eine stat.
by the bridge to a place.

her gebôt unde bat
he commanded and asked

frunt unde holden,
friends and liegemen,

daz sime helfen wolden,
that they-him help would,

daz her den torn verbrande.
that he the tower burned.

ê danner dannen wande,
ere than-he thence turned,

woldern hân gewunnen.
would-he have won.

dô wart dâ begunnen
then was there begun

ein storm vile freissam,
a assault very terrible,

der ze grôzem schaden quam
which to great harm came

den fromen Troiâren.
to-the valiant Trojans.

die ûf dem torne wâren,
who on the tower were,

die liden michel nôt
they suffered great distress

und bliben doch ze jungest tôt.
and remained yet at last dead.

si sûchte manich helt balt.
them sought many-a hero bold.

man gewan daz berfrit mit gewalt,
one won the siege-tower with force,

dazn was nehein wunder:
that was no wonder:

si macheten fûre drunder
they made fire there-under

michel unde vile grôz.
great and very large.

daz ole man dar în gôz,
the oil one there into poured,

daz vil sêre brande.
that very sorely burned.

hin ûf man sande
thither up one sent

heize flamme unde rouch.
hot flame and smoke.

daz fûre an die were flouch,
the fire onto the defenses flew,

sine mohtenz niht erleschen.
they might-it not quench.

ir blanken wâren eschen,
their planks were ash,

die vil liehte branden.
which very brightly burned.

die zwelif wîgande
the twelve warriors

wichen engegen dem winde
gave-way against the wind

oben an dem ende,
above at the end,

sine mohten niender abe komen,
they might nowhere down come,

wan diu leiter was in genomen,
for the ladder was from-them taken,

da si mite solden abe gân.
where they with should down go.

der torn ne moht niht lenger stân,
the tower — might not longer stand,

die sûle wâren verbrant:
the pillars were burned:

dô viel her nider alzehant.
then fell it down at-once.

Michel jâmer dâ was,
Great misery there was,

wand ir neheinen genas.
for of-them none survived.

si liden groze quâle
they suffered great torment

und storben alzemâle
and died all-together

unze an die zwêne man,
until to the two men,

die ich genennen wole kan,
whom I name well can,

Helenôr und Lîcûs.
Helenor and Lycus.

daz sach der hêre Turnûs
that saw the lord Turnus

harde frôlîchen an.
very joyfully at.

Lîcûs karde hin dan;
Lycus turned thither away;

engegen der porten her flôch.
toward the gate he fled.

Helenôr daz swert zôch,
Helenor the sword drew,

daz was scharf unde lank,
that was sharp and long,

dâ mite teter manegen swank,
there with did-he many-a stroke,

sô ez helide wol gezam.
as it to-heroes well befitted.

zehenen her den lîb nam,
to-ten he the life took,

Turnûses holden,
Turnus's liegemen,

die in slahen wolden.
who him slay would.

knehtlîche er sich werde.
knightly he himself defended.

mit dem gûten swerde
with the good sword

slûch her vaste unde stach,
struck he firmly and stabbed,

unze her dar nider lach.
until he there down lay.

ze jungest slûch in Turnûs.
at last struck him Turnus.

dô was der helt Lîcûs
then was the hero Lycus

in den graben hin ûf komen,
in the ditch thither up come,

dâ wart ouch im sîn lîb genomen.
there was also from-him his life taken.

daz jâmer was vile grôz:
that misery was very great:

ein ritter dorch in schôz
a knight through him shot

mit eineme scharphen gêre:
with a sharp spear:

sîne frunt rach her sêre.
his friends avenged he sorely.

Dô hete der hêre Turnûs
Then had the lord Turnus

einen sweher der hiez Rômulûs,
a brother-in-law who was-called Romulus,

der was ein helt vermezzen
he was a hero bold

unde was gesezzen
and was mounted

7055 ûf ein ros daz harde lief.
on a horse that very-fast ran.

die Troiâre er ane rief,
the Trojans he at called,

harde drôweter unde schalt.
very-much threatened-he and reviled.

Ascânjûs der helt balt
Ascanius the hero bold

was ûf der borch obene.
was on the castle above.

7060 daz was im wol ze lobene,
that was to-him well to praise,

her stunt bî sînen mannen.
he stood by his men.

den bogen heter gespannen,
the bow had-he drawn,

dô her solde kêren dan,
when he should turn thence,

ein scharphe strâlen sazter an,
a sharp arrow set-he on,

7065 sîn zoren der was grôz,
his wrath it was great,

in den lîb her in schôz,
into the body he him shot,

daz herze her im dorchbrach,
the heart he to-him pierced,

sô daz her niemer mêr gesprach
so that he never more spoke

ubel noch gût enweder.
evil nor good neither.

von dem rosse viel her neder. 7070
from the horse fell he down.

alsô was im vergolden,
so was to-him repaid,

daz her si hete bescholden.
that he them had reviled.

Pandarus and Bitias

XXXI

Turnus storms the fort from three sides. The giants Pandarus and Bitias open the gate and slaughter the attackers until Turnus himself charges. He drives the Trojans into the fort and springs in after them with fifty men, and Bitias shuts the gate behind him, so his men within are killed and he nearly dies; then Bitias opens it to let his brother in, and Turnus cuts off his thigh. Pandarus is mortally wounded, Turnus withdraws, and next morning Aeneas returns by ship with the young Pallas, Evander's son.

Dô was Turnô vil zoren,
Then was Turnus very wrath,

daz her sô hete verloren
that he so had lost

sînere swester man. 7075
his sister's husband.

eins starken stormes her began
a strong assault he began

ze der borch in drin sinnen.
to the castle in three ways.

her wânde sie gewinnen
he weened it win

zû der selben zîte.
at the same time.

dô stormde an einer sîte
then stormed on one side

Messâpûs und Mezentiûs,
Messapus and Mezentius,

Lausûs und Aventînûs
Lausus and Aventinus

anderhalbe mit here.
on-the-other-side with host.

die Troiâre giengen zewere.
the Trojans went to-defense.

da enzwischen was Turnûs
there between was Turnus

und der grâve Claudjûs
and the count Claudius

mit ir mannen allen.
with their men all.

der torn was gevallen,
the tower was fallen,

den si ê dâ branden.
which they ere there burned.

diu brucke was bestanden,
the bridge was beset,

mit storme giengen sie dar zô.
with assault went they thither to.

harde ervorhten sich dô
very-much feared themselves then

Ascânjûs und sîne man.
Ascanius and his men.

grôz angest her gewan,
great fear he won,

als daz nehein wunder was.
as that no wonder was.

dô het der hêre Ênêas
then had the lord Aeneas

zwêne risen dâ gelâzen,
two giants there left,

die ûf deme torne sâzen
who on the tower sat

ûf dem oberesten hûs.
on the uppermost house.

der eine brûder hiez Pandarûs
the one brother was-called Pandarus

und der ander Bitîas.
and the other Bitias.

dô ez vil nâch sô komen was,
when it very nearly so come was,

daz daz vorborge was verloren,
that the outer-bailey was lost,

daz was den risen vile zoren,
that was to-the giants very wrath,

ez dûht si michel schande,
it seemed to-them great disgrace,

daz si ir vîande
that they their enemies

in sô nâhen sâgen gân.
to-them so near saw go.

ir halsberge heten si an getân,
their hauberks had they on put,

die in ze mâzen wâren
which to-them in measure were

von gûten ringen swâren.
of good rings heavy.

freislîch was ir gemûte
terrible was their mind

und wâren ir hûte
and were their hats

von stahele dicke geslagen,
of steel thickly beaten,

wan sis mohten wol getragen,
for they-them might well bear,

daz liezen sie wole schîn.
that let they well shown.

ir hosen wâren îsenîn
their hose were iron

veste lank unde wît.
firm long and wide.

si wâren gernde in den strît.
they were eager into the fight.

balde giengen sie her abe
quickly went they hither down

von dem torn her ûf den graben,
from the tower hither onto the ditch,

si bestunden michel arbeit,
they undertook great hardship,

iedoch was ez tumbheit,
yet was it folly,

des si wâren berâten.
of-which they were counseled.

die porten sie ûf tâten,
the gate they up did,

die valbrucken liezens nider
the drawbridge let-they down

unde slûgen jene wider,
and struck those back,

die dâ ze storme giengen.
who there to assault went.

grimmechlîchen sis enphiengen
grimly they-them received

mit slegen vile swâren,
with blows very heavy,

wande sie stark wâren
for they strong were

als si von rehte solden wesen.
as they by right should be.

vor in ne mohte niht genesen,
before them — might nothing recover,

si slûgen daz in zû quam,
they slew what to-them to came,

want si wâren in gram
for they were to-them hostile

als den wilden wolven.
as to-the wild wolves.

mit îsenînen kolven
with iron clubs

grôzen, die si trûgen,
great, which they bore,

des hers si vil erslûgen,
of-the host they many slew,

sô daz ez unmâze was,
so that it beyond-measure was,

Pandarûs und Bitîas.
Pandarus and Bitias.

Dô daz Turnûs gesach,
When that Turnus saw,

daz dâ vile tôt lach
that there many dead lay

des hers von den zwein resen,
of-the host from the two giants,

daz nieman mohte genesen,
that no-one might recover,

den si mohten bestrîchen,
whom they might reach,

si mûsten alle entwîchen:
they must all give-way:

dô des Turnûs wart gewar,
when of-that Turnus became aware,

mit tûsent rittern kêrder dar
with thousand knights turned-he thither

mit zornegem mûte.
with angry spirit.

her sprach ‚helede gûte,
he spoke ‚heroes good,

nû denket wol zen handen,
now take-thought well to-the hands,

daz wir diz geanden,
that we this avenge,

ir tumbheit in gelônen.
their folly to-them repay.

niemen sal ir schônen;
no-one shall them spare;

helfet daz wir sie erslân
help that we them slay

und mit den andern în gân,
and with the others in go,

sô is diu borch gewunnen.‘
so is the castle won.‘

dô wart dâ begunnen
then was there begun

ein sperwehsel vile grôz.
a spear-exchange very great.

mit ermbrusten man dâ schôz
with crossbows one there shot

und mit starken gêren.
and with strong spears.

si frometen manegen sêren
they made many-a wounded-one

dâ in beiden sîten,
there on both sides,

daz dâ in korzen zîten
that there in short time

des heres vile tôt lach,
of-the host many dead lay,

daz nieman gahten ne mach.
that no-one count — may.

diu swert dâ vaste klungen,
the swords there firmly rang,

dâ si ze samene drungen,
where they to gathering pressed,

vil manech helm dâ erklank,
very many-a helmet there rang,

daz daz fûre drûz sprank
that the fire out-of-it sprang

brinnende ze berge.
burning on high.

dâ worden halsperge
there became hauberks

mit swerden verscrôten,
with swords hacked,

dâ was mit den tôten
there was with the dead

der wech aller belegen.
the way all covered.

Turnûs der mâre degen
Turnus the famous warrior

gewan idoch daz beste,
won yet the best,

sô daz her sie ze leste
so that he them at last

mit gewalt in die borch slûch.
with force into the castle drove.

dô bleib der Troiâre gnûch
then remained of-the Trojans enough

dar ûze âne ir dank.
there outside without their thanks.

Turnûs in die borch sprank
Turnus into the castle sprang

mit funfzich heliden snellen
with fifty heroes swift

sîner hergesellen.
of-his army-fellows.

Dô Turnûs în der borch was,
When Turnus in the castle was,

dô beslôz der rise Bitîas
then locked the giant Bitias

daz tor hinder ime zô.
the gate behind him to.

in grôz angest quam her dô
into great fear came he then

Turnûs der rîche,
Turnus the rich,

her wânde sicherlîche,
he weened certainly,

daz im sîne holden
that to-him his liegemen

vaste volgen solden
firmly follow should

unde mit im în gân.
and with him in go.

dô was diu porte zû getân.
then was the gate to done.

des leit her michel nôt,
of-that suffered he great distress,

die sîne bliben alle tôt,
the his-own remained all dead,

die mit im în drungen,
who with him in pressed,

die alden mit den jungen,
the old with the young,

ir neheiner genas.
of-them none survived.

selbe er nâch erslagen was
self he nearly slain was

Turnûs der mâre,
Turnus the famous,

wan daz die Troiâre
but that the Trojans

dar ûze wârn beslozzen,
there outside were locked,

ne hete er des niht gnozzen,
— had he of-that not profited,

her hete verloren sîn leben,
he had lost his life,

wan daz im got wolde geben,
but that to-him God would give,

daz des gedahte Bitîas,
that of-that thought Bitias,

daz sîn brûder dûze was
that his brother outside was

mit den anderen beliben.
with the others remained.

her was zû dem tore getriben,
he was to the gate driven,

daz rou in zunmâzen.
that rued him beyond-measure.

her wolde in în lâzen:
he would him in let:

zû der porten her sprank,
to the gate he sprang,

manlîch her dar ûz drank
manfully he there out pressed

vor die porte an eine stat.
before the gate to a place.

Turnûs nâch ime trat
Turnus after him stepped

wander slîbes gerde.
for-he of-the-life desired.

mit eime scharphen swerde,
with a sharp sword,

daz her trûch an sîner hant,
which he bore in his hand,

gereichete her den wîgant:
reached he the warrior:

daz zesewe diech slûch her im abe,
the right thigh struck he to-him off,

daz her viel in den graben,
that he fell into the ditch,

sô daz ime der hals brach.
so that to-him the neck broke.

sîne frunt her an im rach
his friends he on him avenged

der herzoge Turnûs.
the duke Turnus.

die wîle hete Pandarûs
the while had Pandarus

tôtwunden enphangen.
death-wounds received.

dô was der storm ergangen.
then was the assault gone-by.

Der mûden Troiâre,
Of-the weary Trojans,

ichn weiz wie vil der wâre,
I-not know how many of-them were,

die dâ ûzẹ wârn genesen,
who there outside were saved,

die mûsten wole frô wesen,
they must well glad be,

do si in die borch quâmen wider.
when they into the castle came back.

Turnûs gienk dô hin nider,
Turnus went then thither down,

her quam kûme danne.
he came scarcely thence.

dô heter sîner manne
then had-he of-his men

tôt dâ gelâzen
dead there left

vile ûz der mâzen,
very beyond the measure,

die ruwen in vil sêre.
they rued him very sorely.

zweinzich hundert was ir mêre
twenty hundred was of-them more

danne der borgâre
than of-the burghers

dâ erslagen wâre,
there slain were,

want daz unreht was sîn,
for that wrong was his,

daz wart im dicke wole schîn.
that became to-him often well shown.

Dô kêrde hêre Turnûs
Then turned lord Turnus

mit dem here von dem hûs,
with the host from the house,

ze den herbergen her reit.
to the lodgings he rode.

her hete michel arbeit
he had great hardship

erliden unde grôze nôt.
suffered and great distress.

sîm marschalke her gebôt
to-his marshal he commanded

unde hiez gebieten,
and bade command,

daz si daz berieten
that they that provided

unde holfen ahten
and helped heed

umb die schiltwahte.
about the shield-watch.

her hiez siz alsô ane vân,
he bade them-it so on begin,

daz ez worde baz getân
that it should-become better done

dan des nahtes dâ bevoren.
than of-the night there before.

her hete gerne sînen zoren
he had gladly his wrath

uber die borch gerochen,
over the castle avenged,

dô herz hete gesprochen.
when he-it had spoken.

zû sînen frunden her sprach,
to his friends he spoke,

daz si schûfen ir gemach
that they made their ease

unde rûweten die naht.
and rested the night.

des wâren sie wol bedaht
of-that were they well minded

unde wol berâten,
and well counseled,

daz si daz gerne tâten.
that they that gladly did.

Des morgens vile frû
In-the morning very early

der borch kêrde aber zû
to-the castle turned again to

Turnûs mit allem deme here.
Turnus with all the host.

dô sazten sich ze were
then set themselves to defense

die Troiâre alse in nôt was.
the Trojans as to-them need was.

do gesâgen sie wâ Ênêas
then saw they where Aeneas

mit den schiffen zû quam,
with the ships to came,

der manegen helt lussam
who many-a hero lovely

mit ime dare brahte,
with him thither brought,

des Turnûs niht gedahte.
of-which Turnus not thought.

hern wiste niht dar umbe,
he knew nothing there about,

niwan daz die tumbe,
except that the foolish,

die ûf der borge lâgen,
who on the castle lay,

und si'n komen sâgen,
and they-him come saw,

vor froweden sie sprungen,
for joy they leapt,

si bliesen unde sungen.
they blew and sang.

dô gemarkte ez Messâpûs
then marked it Messapus

und der helt Turnûs.
and the hero Turnus.

do er der schiffe geware wart,
when he of-the ships aware became,

dô heter in die zûvart
then had-he from-them the landing

harde gerne benomen:
very gladly taken:

dô wâren sie ze rosse komen
then were they to horse come

ûz den schiffen an daz lant.
out-of the ships onto the land.

Ênêas der wîgant
Aeneas the warrior

wol gewâfent her was,
well armed he was,

und der junge Pallas,
and the young Pallas,

der kunich Êvanders sun.
the king Evander's son.

der wolde ritterschaft dâ tûn,
he would knighthood there do,

der lussame jungelink,
the lovely youngling,

der des tages sîn dink
who of-the day his thing

vil manlîch dâ ane vienk,
very manfully there at undertook,

die wîle sîn heil vore gienk.
the while his fortune before went.

Pallas Falls

XXXII

Turnus leads three thousand knights in three troops, and the young Pallas, armed in green, spurs out against him. Their first joust breaks both spears, and the armies meet in a battle that lasts all day. Aeneas cuts through the enemy with the sword Vulcan sent him, and Lycomedes brings five hundred men sent from the castle by Ascanius. When the Trojans begin to flee into the sea, Pallas shames them back. He challenges Turnus, strikes him to his knees, and is killed by Turnus's sword thrust under his hauberk.

Dô was erlûhtet der tach.
Then was lit the day.

der hêre Turnûs ersach,
the lord Turnus saw,

daz si ze rosse wâren komen.
that they to horse were come.

driu tûsent ritter heter genomen,
three thousand knights had-he taken,

geteilet in drî schare.
divided into three troops.

dô gesach si varen dare
then saw them fare thither

der Troiâre Ênêas
the Trojan Aeneas

und der junge Pallas
and the young Pallas

unde sîn geselleschaft,
and his company,

die vil schône ritterschaft
who very fair knighthood

frôlîche dâ begunden.
joyfully there began.

si heten angebunden
they had bound-on

manech zeichen unde van.
many-a ensign and banner.

Turnûs der randes an,
Turnus who rode-it on,

der genendige wîgant.
the bold warrior.

ein zeichen fûrder an der hant,
an ensign carried-he in the hand,

daz was gele unde rôt.
that was yellow and red.

des ne wâre dehein nôt,
of-that — were no need,

daz her iht kûner wâre.
that he anything bolder were.

ouch hete der helt mâre
also had the hero famous

einen wâfenrok ane
a surcoat on

alsô getân als sîn vane
so made as his banner

rôt unde gel samît,
red and yellow samite,

und saz ûf ein râvît,
and sat on a charger,

daz harde lief unde sprank.
that hard ran and leapt.

ûz der schar her vore drank
out-of the troop he forth pressed

sînen ritteren bevoren.
his knights before.

daz ros rûrder mit den sporen.
the horse spurred-he with the spurs.

daz sach der junge Pallas.
that saw the young Pallas.

wol gewâfent her was,
well armed he was,

sô nie dehein kunich baz.
so never any king better.

ûf ein kastelân her saz,
on a destrier he sat,

daz sînem vater sande
which to-his father sent

ûz einem fromeden lande
out-of a foreign land

der kunich vone Marrok.
the king of Morocco.

phellîn was sîn wafenrok
of-silk was his surcoat

unde sîn zeichen was
and his ensign was

cindâl grûne als ein gras
sendal green as a grass

und sîn schilt was grûne.
and his shield was green.

Pallas der was kûne,
Pallas he was bold,

her was ein helt lussam.
he was a hero lovely.

daz ros her mit den sporen nam
the horse he with the spurs took

dô her Turnûses wart geware,
when he of-Turnus became aware,

dô sprancte her vor sîner schare
then spurred he before his troop

vor allen sînen holden:
before all his liegemen:

die in wîsen solden,
who him guide should,

die enmohten sîn niht behalden.
they might him not hold.

her liez es got walden,
he let it God rule,

Pallas der wîgant,
Pallas the warrior,

den schilt heter an die hant
the shield had-he to the hand

zû dem brîtel genomen,
to the bridle taken,

wander sach Turnum komen,
for-he saw Turnus come,

hern wolde niht wenken,
he would not waver,

sîn sper liez her senken,
his spear let he sink,

alsô tet Turnûs daz sîn.
so did Turnus the his-own.

dâ wart degenheit schîn
there became valor shown

von den wîganden.
by the warriors.

ze samene sie geranden,
to together they rode,

als si beide luste.
as them both pleased.

sie tâten eine juste
they did a joust

harde ritterlîche
very knightly

zwein degenen gelîche,
to-two warriors alike,

âne arge liste.
without evil cunning.

ir neweder vermiste,
of-them neither missed,

beide sie wol stâchen,
both they well thrust,

daz ir schafte brâchen,
that their shafts broke,

die sprundelen hôhe flogen.
the splinters high flew.

schiere sie diu swert zogen,
quickly they the swords drew,

der si niht vergâȥen.
of-which they not forgot.

ir beider ros gesâȥen
of-them both horses sat

ûf die hassen dar neder,
on the haunches there down,

iedoch enviel ir deweder.
yet fell of-them neither.

Dô si alsô heten gevaren,
When they so had fared,

dô gemischeten sich die scharen
then mingled themselves the troops

vaste in beiden sîten,
firmly on both sides,

dô gieng ez an daz strîten:
then went it to the fighting:

daz here quam beidenthalb zû,
the host came on-both-sides to,

iedoch was ez dannoch frû.
yet was it then early.

ê dannez worde mitter tach,
ere than-it should-become mid day,

dô wart dâ manech grôz slach
then was there many-a great stroke

enphangen unde gegeben
received and given

und verlâzen manech leben
and left many-a life

ze solhem widergelde.
in such requital.

an dem breiten velde
on the broad field

wart dô michel gedrank.
was then great press.

ez wâre ze sagenne alze lank,
it were to tell all-too long,

wer dâ viel und wer dâ stach
who there fell and who there stabbed

und wer dâ sîn spere brach,
and who there his spear broke,

wer dâ starb und wer dâ slûch,
who there died and who there slew,

want der was vil unde gnûch
for of-them was many and enough

und wâren unzalhaft.
and were countless.

want dâ was grôz mankraft
for there was great host-of-men

an dem breiten gevilde.
on the broad field.

dâ worden die schilde
there became the shields

und die helme verscrôten.
and the helmets hacked.

Turnûs liez dâ tôten
Turnus left there dead

zweinzich stunt mêre
twenty times more

denne Ênêas der hêre.
than Aeneas the lord.

Dô kêrde Ênêas
Then turned Aeneas

dâ ez aller dickest was,
where it of-all thickest was,

die vîande brach er dorch.
the enemies broke he through.

dâ wart blûtich manech forch,
there became bloody many-a furrow,

vil manegen her valde,
very many-a-one he felled,

den nieman ne zalde.
whom no-one — counted.

vil her ir dar nider stach,
many he of-them there down stabbed,

unz daz im sîn spere brach.
until that to-him his spear broke.

dô zôch der kûne Troiân
then drew the bold Trojan

daz swert, daz ime Volcân
the sword, which to-him Vulcan

dorch minne hête gesant,
for love had sent,

daz fûrder bar an sîner hant,
which carried-he bare in his hand,

ez was lobelîch genûch.
it was praiseworthy enough.

swen sô her dermite slûch,
whomever so he there-with struck,

der ime ze rehtem slage quam,
who to-him to right stroke came,

vil schiere er ime den lîp nam.
very quickly he from-him the life took.

der helm ne was nie sô gût
the helmet — was never so good

noch der îsenîne hût
nor the iron hat

noch der halsberch nie sô vast,
nor the hauberk never so firm,

daz ez im holfe iht umb ein bast,
that it to-him would-help anything by a bast,

wander hete vil grôze kraft.
for-he had very great strength.

si wâren unzalehaft,
they were countless,

die vor im tôt lâgen.
who before him dead lay.

die ander die daz gesâgen,
the others who that saw,

daz her solch wunder worhte,
that he such wonder wrought,

si rûmden im dorch vorhte.
they cleared to-him for fear.

Die dô der borch phlâgen,
Who then the castle kept,

dô si daz gesâgen,
when they that saw,

daz der hêre Ênêas
that the lord Aeneas

mit angesten dâ was
with fears there was

bî sînen vîanden,
among his enemies,

Ascânjûs ime sande
Ascanius to-him sent

funf hundert sneller helde
five hundred swift heroes

mit helmen ûz ze velde,
with helmets out to field,

ein wol gewâfente schar.
a well armed troop.

die leite ein kûne helt dar,
it led a bold hero thither,

der frumige Lycomîde.
the valiant Lycomedes.

si quâmen ze dem strîde
they came to the battle

Ênêase wol ze staden
to-Aeneas well to aid

und den vîanden ze schaden,
and to-the enemies to harm,

daz bescheinden sie genûgen:
that showed they enough:

des heres si vil erslûgen.
of-the host they many slew.

dô vaht der hêre Ênêas
then fought the lord Aeneas

und der junge Pallas
and the young Pallas

alsô helide gûte.
as heroes good.

dô wart von dem blûte
then became from the blood

daz mere dâ bevore rôt.
the sea there before red.

dâ bleib manech helt tôt,
there remained many-a hero dead,

der rosse vil dâ tôt lach.
of-the horses many there dead lay.

der storm werde al den tach,
the assault lasted all the day,

daz her nie ende genam.
that it never end took.

als after mitter tach quam,
as after mid day came,

do gewan Turnûs daz heil,
then won Turnus the fortune,

daz der Troiâre ein teil
that of-the Trojans a part

kêrde mit fluhte.
turned with flight.

die getrôste mit zuhte
them comforted with breeding

der junge kunich Pallas,
the young king Pallas,

dem ez harde leit was.
to-whom it very grievous was.

Der helt Pallas gesach
The hero Pallas saw

ime vile leiden tach,
for-him very hateful day,

dô her daz troische here
when he the Trojan host

sach fliehen in daz mere.
saw flee into the sea.

do ers allerêrist wart gewar,
when he-of-it first became aware,

dô kêrder snellîche dar
then turned-he quickly thither

dâ si hin flohen mit dem van.
where they away fled with the banner.

der hêre Pallas rief si an,
the lord Pallas called them at,

der frumige unde rîche,
the valiant and rich,

vil gewaldechlîche
very mightily

mit einre hôhen stimme
with a high voice

‚welt ir ze Troie swimme?
‚will you to Troy swim?

daz is michel tumbheit,
that is great folly,

want daz mere is vile breit,
for the sea is very broad,

ir moget ûch lîhte ertrenken.
you may yourselves easily drown.

ir solt ûch baz bedenken,
you shall yourselves better bethink,

gûter hande lûte:
good kinds-of people:

ichn weiz waz daz bedûte,
I-not know what that mean,

daz ir êrhaften tôt fliet
that you honorable death flee

und ûch zeim schantlîchen ziet.
and yourselves to-a shameful draw.

dorch welhe rede tût ir daz?
for what reason do you that?

gunnet ir den vischen baz
grant you to-the fish rather

daz si ûwer fleisch ezzen,
that they your flesh eat,

helide vermezzen,
heroes bold,

dan den vogelen wilden
than to-the birds wild

hir ûze an deme gevilde?
here outside on the field?

war zû is û daz gût?
where to is to-you that good?

ich wîse û wie ir baz tût:
I direct you how you better do:

ir moget wol mit êren
you may well with honor

ze ûwerm hêren kêren,
to your lord turn,

edile wîgande,
noble warriors,

der ûch ûz ûwerm lande
who you out-of your land

in ellende brahte,
into exile brought,

sô tût ir êrahte.
so do you honorably.

irn solt niht fliehen
you shall not flee

und gnendechlîche ziehen
and boldly draw

diu wol snîdenden swert,
the well cutting swords,

ob ir des lîbes iht gert,
if you of-the life anything desire,

und slahet die ûch wellen slân.
and slay those-who you will slay.

daz dunket mich baz getân,
that seems to-me better done,

daz ir gûte knehte weset
that you good knights are

und mit êren geneset
and with honor are-saved

unde rûm erwerbet,
and glory win,

dan ir mit schanden sterbet.‘
than you with disgrace die.‘

Dô sprach aber Pallas
Then spoke again Pallas

alsô her ein helt was
as he a hero was

‚ichn wil niht daz ir verzaget.
‚I will not that you despair.

der ûch dâ here hât gejaget,
who you there hither has chased,

ich wil des gedingen
I will of-that hope

und wil in dar zû bringen,
and will him there to bring,

daz hers niht mêre entû.
that he-it not more does.

wir scoln im wider stên nû,
we shall to-him against stand now,

sô daz unser eintweder
so that of-us one

den anderen leget dar neder
the other lays there down

von dem rosse an daz sant.‘
from the horse onto the sand.‘

do gehôrde ez der wîgant,
then heard it the warrior,

Turnûs, daz herz sprach.
Turnus, that he-it spoke.

diu rede was im ungemach
the speech was to-him discomfort

unde harde unmâre.
and very unwelcome.

her frâgete in wer her wâre,
he asked him who he were,

Turnûs der vorste,
Turnus the prince,

und wie her sich getorste
and how he himself dared

zû zim ebenmâzen,
to him to-equal,

her mohtez wole lâzen.
he might-it well leave.

Dô sagete ime Pallas
Then told to-him Pallas

vile rehte wer her was
very rightly who he was

und daz her im wâre gram
and that he to-him were hostile

und her dorch daz dare quam,
and he for that thither came,

daz her im schaden wolde,
that he to-him harm would,

dorch anders nehein scholde.
for other no cause.

daz was Turnô vile zorn,
that was to-Turnus very wroth,

daz ros rûrder mit den sporn.
the horse spurred-he with the spurs.

alsô tet ouch Pallas.
so did also Pallas.

daz sîne vile snel was.
the his-own very swift was.

hern wolde im niht entwîchen.
he would to-him not give-way.

si liezen dare strîchen,
they let thither sweep,

die zwêne degene rîche
the two warriors rich

sich dacten ritterlîche
themselves covered knightly

mit den schilden die si fûrden.
with the shields which they carried.

dô si mit den sporen rûrden,
when they with the spurs pricked,

dô stach ir ieweder
then thrust of-them each

den andern ritterlîche neder
the other knightly down

von den rossen zû der erden.
from the horses to the earth.

dâ mûste ervollet werden,
there must fulfilled become,

des si sêre gerden.
what they sorely desired.

si griffen zû den swerden,
they grasped to the swords,

die helide vîle milde
the heroes very generous

zehiewen die schilde
hewed-apart the shields

ze spânen vil kleinen,
to splinters very small,

si zwêne wârn dâ eine,
they two were there alone,

daz nieman dâ bî in was.
that no-one there by them was.

dô slûch der helt Pallas
then struck the hero Pallas

Turnô einen solhen slach,
to-Turnus a such stroke,

daz her nâch dar nider lach.
that he nearly there down lay.

her brahte in des innen,
he brought him of-that aware,

daz her sîner minnen
that he of-his love

betalle niene gerde.
wholly not-at-all desired.

mit dem scharphen swerde,
with the sharp sword,

daz̨ her an der hant trûch,
which he in the hand bore,

den helm her ime dorch slûch
the helmet he to-him through struck

und der hûben ringe.
and of-the coif rings.

dem edilen jungelinge
to-the noble youngling

Turnô bedohte,
Turnus seemed,

daz̨ Pallas wole mohte
that Pallas well might

sîn ein vile gût degen,
be a very good warrior,

wander was nâch tôt gelegen
for-he was nearly dead laid

der mâre helt lussam.
the famous hero lovely.

ûf diu knie her nider quam
onto the knees he down came

vor Pallase an den sant.
before Pallas on the sand.

daz̨ swert behielder in der hant,
the sword kept-he in the hand,

hern mohte deheinen slach erzien.
he might no stroke draw.

aldâ her stunt ûf den knien,
where he stood on the knees,

her hete gerne sich erwert,
he had gladly himself defended,

her stach Pallase daz swert
he thrust to-Pallas the sword

underm halsberge in den lîb,
under-the hauberk into the body,

sô daz herm lant unde wîb
so that he-him land and woman

immer mêr mit fride liez:
ever more in peace left:

tôten hern dar nider stiez.
dead he-him there down thrust.

Turnus Carried Off to Sea

XXXIII

Pallas lies slain, praised for the hundred men or more he had slain. Turnus takes from the dead youth's finger the emerald ring Aeneas had given Pallas, which later costs him his life. Wounded by an archer in a ship, Turnus leaps aboard and beheads him, but the anchor rope comes loose and the wind carries him out to sea. He laments that he will be called fainthearted and that Lavinia was born to his misfortune. A south wind brings him home to his father Daunus. Aeneas has Pallas laid on a bier and returns to the fight.

Dô lach Pallas dâ erslagen,
Then lay Pallas there slain,

den sîne frunt wol mûsten klagen,
whom his friends well must lament,

daz her alsô veiger was,
that he so doomed was,

der junge kunink Pallas.
the young king Pallas.

dâ was der jâmer vile grôz,
there was the misery very great,

daz her des ubile genôz,
that he of-it ill profited,

daz her dorch êre dare quam
that he for honor thither came

der mâre helt lussam.
the famous hero lovely.

ez was ein vil ubil zît,
it was a very evil time,

hern was in storm noch in strît
he was in assault nor in fight

dâ bevor nie komen ê
there before never come ere

noch getet sint nimmer mê.
nor did since never more.

dannoch was ez im ze frû.
still was it for-him too early.

her greif vil manlîche zû
he grasped very manfully to

der helt unbescholden:
the hero unreproached:

her hete sich vergolden
he had himself repaid

dâ bevor allen den tach,
there before all the day,

daz her mit êren tôt lach,
that he with honor dead lay,

wander hete erslagen ê
for-he had slain ere

hundert manne oder mê.
hundred men or more.

daz half in luzel iedoch,
that helped him little yet,

wan daz man in lobet noch
save that one him praises still

und diu tugent is von im gescriben.
and the virtue is of him written.

wârer mit schanden tôt beliben;
were-he with disgrace dead remained;

daz al verswigen wâre.
that all silenced were.

nû nam der helt mâre
now took the hero famous

vile êrhaft sînen ende
very honorably his end

sunder alle missewende.
without all fault.

Dô Turnûs gesach,
When Turnus saw,

daz der helt Pallas lach
that the hero Pallas lay

und tôt viel vor im an den sant,
and dead fell before him on the sand,

ein vingerlîn heter an der hant
a little-ring had-he on the hand

der junkhêre Pallas,
the young-lord Pallas,

daz gab ime Ênêas
that gave to-him Aeneas

dorch trouwe und dorch fruntschaft,
for faith and for friendship,

dorch minne und dorch geselleschaft,
for love and for companionship,

daz was rôt goldîn;
that was red golden;

ezn dorfte niht bezzer sîn
it needed not better be

und enwas niht ze kleine,
and was not too small,

mit einem edilen steine,
with a noble stone,

daz was ein smaragdûs grûne.
that was an emerald green.

Turnûs der helt kûne
Turnus the hero bold

vergaz sîn selbes sêre drane.
forgot himself self sorely thereon.

ê danne er kêrde dane,
ere than he turned thence,

abe dem vinger herz im nam, 7615
off the finger he-it from-him took,

daz im sint zunstaden quam.
which to-him since to-harm came.

her tet ouch bôslîche
he did also wickedly

Turnûs der rîche
Turnus the rich

unde harde sînen gewalt,
and very-much his power,

des her sît sêre engalt, 7620
of-which he since sorely paid,

dô der helt Ênêas
when the hero Aeneas

sîn sô gewaldich was,
of-him so mighty was,

daz her wol genesen mohte sîn,
that he well saved might be,

niwan daz vingerlîn,
except the little-ring,

daz her in dar umbe slûch. 7625
that he him there about slew.

dâ mite engalders ouch genûch.
there with paid-he also enough.

Dô Turnûs dâ mit umbe gienk
When Turnus there with about went

und sîn dink ane vienk,
and his thing on undertook,

als ime selben geviel,
as to-him self pleased,

dô was dâ bî in eime kiel
then was there by in a keel

ein schutze mit eime bogen.
an archer with a bow.

her schôz Turnûm den herzogen
he shot Turnus the duke

dorch den halsberch in die sîten
through the hauberk into the side

ime selben zubilen zîten,
to-him self at-evil times,

wanderz mit dem lîbe galt.
for-he-it with the life paid.

Turnûs der helt balt
Turnus the hero bold

vil schiere er umbe sach,
very quickly he about looked,

wand im der zoren sêre wach.
for to-him the wrath sorely woke.

dô gesach der helt snel
then saw the hero swift

oben ûf daz castel
above on the castle

den schutzen mit dem bogen stân,
the archer with the bow stand,

der ez ime hete getân.
who it to-him had done.

sint was diu stunde niht lank,
since was the while not long,

vil schiere er in daz schif sprank.
very quickly he into the ship sprang.

dô in der schutze komen sach,
when him the archer come saw,

dô flôch her dannen unde lach
then fled he thence and lay

in der sentînen nider,
in the bilge down,

hern quam ouch nimmer mêre wider.
he came also never more back.

dô suchte in der wîgant
then sought him the warrior

Turnûs, unz er in vant.
Turnus, until he him found.

daz houbet her im abe slûch:
the head he to-him off struck:

dâ heter schaden ane genûch,
there had-he harm on enough,

unde nam im den bogen.
and took from-him the bow.

die wîle daz der herzoge
the while that the duke

alsô was dar under,
so was there under,

do geschach ein michel wunder,
then happened a great wonder,

daz was vil grôz unheil:
that was very great misfortune:

dô lôste sich daz ankerseil
then loosed itself the anchor-rope

dâ daz schif mit was gehaft.
where the ship with was fastened.

der wint mit grôzer kraft
the wind with great strength

von dem lande dô quam,
from the land then came,

daz schif her vor sich nam
the ship it before itself took

und treib ez verre ûf daz mere,
and drove it far upon the sea,

sô daz Turnûs zû dem here
so that Turnus to the host

niht enmohte wider komen
not might back come

weder ze schaden noch ze fromen.
neither to harm nor to profit.

Dô Turnûs des gewar wart,
When Turnus of-it aware became,

dô gerou in diu vart,
then rued him the voyage,

daz her in daz schif quam.
that he into the ship came.

dô sprach der helt lussam
then spoke the hero lovely

‚ôwê ungelucker man,
‚alas unlucky man,

daz ich daz leben ie gewan!
that I the life ever won!

nû bin ich sêre missetrôst.
now am I sorely ill-comforted.

doch hât mich dicke got erlôst
yet has me often God redeemed

ûzer maneger grôzer nôt.
out-of many great distress.

wâre ich ûf der erde tôt
were I on the earth dead

belîben, sô wâre ich lîhte verklaget.
remained, so were I easily fully-lamented.

man sal sprechen ich sî verzaget
one shall speak I be dismayed

und fliehe dorch mîn bôsheit.
and flee for my wickedness.

ich hân vil michel arbeit
I have very great hardship

mit grôzen êren dicke erliden.
with great honors often suffered.

hete ich diz eine vermiden!
had I this one avoided!

nû is ez leider al verloren.
now is it alas all lost.

Lâvînâ was mir geboren
Lavinia was to-me born

ze grôzem unheile.
to great misfortune.

daz mir daz ze teile
that to-me that as share

von ir halb was getân
on her behalf was done

und ich es niht mohte engân,
and I it not might escape,

des mach ich wol unfrô sîn.
of-that may I well unglad be.

ez is mir wole worden schîn
it is to-me well become shown

unde bin es wol gewis,
and am of-it well certain,

daz ez den goten leit is,
that it to-the gods grievous is,

daz ich sô vile hân getân
that I so much have done

wider ir mâge dem Troiân:
against their kinsman the Trojan:

des engilde ich vile sêre.
of-that pay I very sorely.

quâme ich ouch immer mêre
should-come I also ever more

lebende ze lande,
living to land,

ich hetes grôze schande.
I had-of-it great disgrace.

kome ich aber wider niet,
(if)-come I but back not,

sone rûche ich waz mir geschiet
so-not care I what to-me happens

(sprach der helt rîche),
(spoke the hero rich),

sô mûz ich jâmerlîche
so must I wretchedly

ûf diseme mere ligen tôt.
on this sea lie dead.

daz is diu allermeiste nôt,
that is the very-greatest distress,

dâ ich ie in quam.
where I ever in came.

diz wilde mere is mir gram,
this wild sea is to-me hostile,

ouch hazzent mich die winde,
also hate me the winds,

als ich ez wol bevinde,
as I it well find,

die mich von danne hânt getriben.
which me from thence have driven.

daz ich dâ niht was beliben
that I there not was remained

nâch mînen êren erslagen,
after my honors slain,

daz mûz ich nû wole klagen,
that must I now well lament,

wandich ne trouwe niht genesen,
for-I — trust not recover,

ez ne wâre ob daz mohte wesen,
it unless were if that might be,

daz ich gerne gesâge,
that I gladly would-see,

daz der wint gelâge,
that the wind lay-down,

der nordert dâ here vert.
which north there hither goes.

wâre mir daz heil beschert,
were to-me the fortune granted,

daz mich des got gewerde,
that me of-that God grant,

daz her sundert kêrde,
that he south turned,

sô mohte mîn rât werden,
so might my counsel become,

sô quâme ich ze erden
so should-come I to earth

dem Troiâre ze banen.
to-the Trojan to path.

des wil ich got manen,
of-that will I God remind,

daz her mich wider bringe
that he me back bring

mit gnâdechlîchem dinge.‘
with gracious thing.‘

Alsô fûr der helt balt
So fared the hero bold

in des windes gewalt,
in the wind's power,

der mit dem freislîchen mere vaht,
which with the terrible sea fought,

den tach unde die naht
the day and the night

unze an den andern tach.
until to the other day.

der nordert wint gelach
the north wind lay-down

und der sundert wint quam,
and the south wind came,

der treib den helt lussam
it drove the hero lovely

wider zû lande,
back to land,

al dâr her sich bekande.
all where he himself knew.

dô gelante Turnûs
then landed Turnus

vor eine borch dâ Dampnûs
before a castle where Daunus

sîn vater hêre uber was.
his father lord over was.

daz half im daz her genas,
that helped to-him that he survived,

Turnûs der helt lussam,
Turnus the hero lovely,

daz her in daz schif quam,
that he into the ship came,

dô her Pallantem slûch
when he Pallas slew

und in daz schif danne trûch.
and him the ship thence carried.

ne heten daz schif niht dan getragen,
— had the ship not thence carried,

Ênêas hete in erslagen.
Aeneas had him slain.

Dô daz alsô was getân,
When that so was done,

daz Pallas der edle man
that Pallas the noble man

sînen lîb hete verloren,
his life had lost,

daz was Ênêê vil zoren,
that was to-Aeneas very wroth,

unde hiez in schiere bâren
and bade him quickly bier

sîne lûte die dâ wâren.
his people who there were.

Ênêas klagete sêre
Aeneas lamented sorely

sîn jugent und sîn êre
his youth and his honor

sîn tugent und sîn trouwe.
his virtue and his faith.

her hete grôze rouwe
he had great rue

der helt wol geborne.
the hero well born.

vor leide und vor zorne
for sorrow and for wrath

ne mohter niht gesprechen,
— might-he not speak,

her wolde in gerne rechen
he would him gladly avenge

an Turnô der in slûch.
on Turnus who him slew.

den helt suchte her genûch
the hero sought he enough

und kêrde wider in den strît.
and turned back into the fight.

her slûch wunden vile wît
he struck wounds very wide

mit sîner ellenthaften hant.
with his valiant hand.

swen her an sînem wege vant,
whomever he on his way found,

her wâre junk oder alt,
he were young or old,

mit dem lîbe her ez galt.
with the life he it paid.

Mezentius and Lausus

XXXIV

Aeneas wounds Mezentius in the thigh, and his men carry him off. His son Lausus attacks Aeneas, is unhorsed, and dies under his sword. Mezentius, mad with grief, rides out wounded and is killed in turn. Night parts the battle; in the morning the princes of Turnus's host learn that Turnus has gone, and send Aventinus to offer a truce of fourteen nights: if Turnus does not return, Aeneas shall have the woman and the land. They burn their dead, and Aeneas has a rich bier made to send Pallas home to his father.

Ênêas der hêre
Aeneas the lord

was erbolgen sêre
was angered sorely

unde rouwich genûch.
and rueful enough.

sîner vîande er erslûch
of-his enemies he slew

vile âne mâze.
very without measure.

her machete eine strâze
he made a street

enalmitten dorchz gedrank.
in-the-very-middle through-the throng.

dô quam her uber lank
then came he over long

dâ ime Mezentiûs wider reit.
where to-him Mezentius against rode.

der leite eine schare breit,
who led a troop broad,

dâ reit her hêrlîchen bevoren.
there rode he lordly before.

dô rûrde Ênêas mit den sporen
then spurred Aeneas with the spurs

daz ros dâ her ûffe saz.
the horse that he upon sat.

ezn was trâge noch laz,
it was sluggish nor slack,

ez trûch in ritterlîche dar.
it bore him knightly thither.

dô des der hêre wart gewar,
when of-that the lord became aware,

Mesentiûs der rîche degen,
Mezentius the rich warrior,

dô kêrder Ênêase engegen,
then turned-he to-Aeneas toward,

in den schilt her in stach,
into the shield he him thrust,

sô daz im sîn sper brach,
so that to-him his spear broke,

Mezentiûs der helt balt.
Mezentius the hero bold.

Ênêas ime daz vergalt
Aeneas to-him that repaid

harde ritterlîche wider:
very knightly back:

sîn sper daz liez her senken nider,
his spear that let he sink down,

wand ime der arm wunt was.
for to-him the arm wounded was.

der Troiâre Ênêas
the Trojan Aeneas

ein wênich ob deme knie
a little above the knee

stach hern rehte dorch daz die
thrust he-him right through the thigh

und daz in trûch daz ros dorch,
and that him bore the horse through,

sô daz si beidiu in einer vorch
so that they both in one furrow

ob einander lâgen.
over one-another lay.

sîn man die daz gesâgen
his men who that saw

die lôsten in ritterlîche,
they freed him knightly,

wander was ein vorste rîche
for-he was a prince rich

und was des rehte bedaht
and was of-that rightly minded

unde hete mit ime braht
and had with him brought

manegen helt gûten,
many-a hero good,

die'm sînen lîb behûten.
who-to-him his life guarded.

ze den herbergen sie in trûgen,
to the lodgings they him carried,

die arzâte ime twûgen
the physicians for-him washed

daz blût von den wunden.
the blood from the wounds.

schiere sie in bunden
quickly they him bound

als sie von rehte solden tûn.
as they by right should do.

dô vernamz Lausûs sîn sun,
then heard-it Lausus his son,

daz sîn vater wunt was,
that his father wounded was,

und weste wol daz Ênêas
and knew well that Aeneas

die selben wunden hete getân.
the same wounds had done.

dô bestunder den Troiân
then attacked-he the Trojan

der junkhêre rîche.
the young-lord rich.

her stach ritterlîche
he thrust knightly

daz sper in sîme schilde enzwei.
the spear in his shield in-two.

daz ne war im niht ein ei,
that — was to-him not an egg,

her vergalt imz ritterlîche wider
he repaid to-him-it knightly back

und stach in von dem rosse nider
and thrust him from the horse down

als lank sô sîn spere was.
as long as his spear was.

dô kêrde Ênêas
then turned Aeneas

uber den helt jungen.
over the hero young.

dô was her ûf gesprungen,
then was he up sprung,

daz swert hete her erzogen,
the sword had he drawn,

hinder deme satelbogen
behind the saddle-bow

daz ros her ime enzwei slûch,
the horse he to-him in-two struck,

deiz nimmer satel mêr getrûch
that-it never saddle more bore

und der helt lussam
and the hero lovely

zû der erden bequam.
to the earth came.

manlîche her ûf sprank,
manfully he up sprang,

Lausûs ime zû drank,
Lausus to-him to pressed,

unde Ênêas der degen
and Aeneas the warrior

trat im ernisthafte engegen.
stepped to-him earnestly toward.

Dô die helide gûte
When the heroes good

mit grimmigeme mûte
with grim spirit

ze samene bequâmen,
to gathering came,

si gâben unde nâmen
they gave and took

die slege freislîche.
the blows terribly.

der junkhêre rîche
the young-lord rich

bestunt den kûnen Troiân,
attacked the bold Trojan,

der ime hete getân
who to-him had done

und sînem vater leide.
and to-his father sorrow.

dô schirmeten si beide,
then fenced they both,

als in beiden nôt was.
as to-them both need was.

dô konde aber Ênêas
then could but Aeneas

baz vehten unde schirmen,
better fight and fence,

hern liez nie gehirmen
he let never rest

Lausum den jungelink,
Lausus the youngling,

her leidete im daz tagedink
he made-loath to-him the day's-business

swie sô her sich werde.
however so he himself defended.

mit dem scharphen swerde,
with the sharp sword,

daz Ênêas an der hant trûch,
which Aeneas in the hand bore,

dorch den helm her in slûch
through the helmet he him struck

einen freislîchen slach,
a terrible stroke,

daz her tôt vor ime lach
that he dead before him lay

und des schirmennes vergaz.
and of-the fencing forgot.

ûf daz ros her dô gesaz,
onto the horse he then sat,

daz dâ Lausûses was.
that there Lausus's was.

dar ûffe reit Ênêas
there upon rode Aeneas

vil ageleiẓe dannen
very eagerly thence

von Lausûses mannen,
from Lausus's men,

die in gerne wolden slân,
who him gladly would slay,

ob siẓ mohten hân getân.
if they-it might have done.

Dô was daẓ after mitten tach,
Then was it after mid day,

dô frâgete der dâ wunt lach,
then asked he-who there wounded lay,

Mezentiûs der mâre,
Mezentius the famous,

wâ sîn sun wâre.
where his son were.

her hiez nâch ime senden,
he bade after him send,

ob man in mohte vinden,
if one him might find,

daẓ man in brahte schiere.
that one him brought quickly.

der boten wâren viere,
of-the messengers were four,

die nâch im varen solden
who after him fare should

und in bringen wolden,
and him bring would,

als der hêre gebôt.
as the lord commanded.

dô saget man in daẓ her was tôt.
then told one them that he was dead.

dô si die rede vernâmen,
when they the tidings heard,

schiere si wider quâmen
quickly they back came

und sagten im daz̧ her tôt was
and told him that he dead was

unde daz̧ in Ênêas
and that him Aeneas

selbe hête erslagen.
self had slain.

dô braht man in dâ zû getragen.
then brought one him there to carried.

Dô daz̧ Mezentiûs gesach,
When that Mezentius saw,

niht langer her ne lach,
no longer he — lay,

unsinnechlîche er ûf sprank,
madly he up sprang,

als in diu grôz̧e rouwe twank,
as him the great rue forced,

mit zornigen dingen:
with angry things:

sîn ros hiez̧er bringen,
his horse bade-he bring,

Mezentiûs der alde,
Mezentius the old,

her wâfende sich balde,
he armed himself quickly,

vil kûme er ûf daz̧ ros quam,
very scarcely he onto the horse came,

sînen schilt her dô nam,
his shield he then took,

als schiere sô her ûf saz̧.
as quickly as he up sat.

sîner wunden her vergaz,
of-his wounds he forgot,

daz was iedoch tumbheit.
that was yet folly.

tobelîche her dô reit
madly he then rode

unde leitte danne
and led thence

driu hundert sîner manne
three hundred of-his men

und kêrde al dâr der storm was.
and turned all where the assault was.

dâ widerreit im Ênêas,
there rode-against him Aeneas,

und alser in erkande,
and when-he him knew,

vaster in an rande:
faster him at rode:

dô têt ime der Troiân,
then did to-him the Trojan,

als her dem sune hete getân,
as he to-the son had done,

her slûch in daz her tôt lach.
he struck him that he dead lay.

der storm wert allen den tach,
the assault lasted all the day,

unz daz in diu naht schiet,
until that them the night parted,

alsus saget uns daz liet.
thus tells us the song.

Dô der tach vore quam
When the day before came

und in diu naht daz lieht benam
and from-them the night the light took

und der storm ergangen was,
and the assault gone-by was,

dô kêrde Ênêas
then turned Aeneas

und sîne Troiâne
and his Trojans

ûfen Montalbâne,
up-to Montalbane,

diu dâ stunt bî deme mere.
which there stood by the sea.

die ander kêrden zû dem here,
the others turned to the host,

die die borch heten besezzen.
who the castle had besieged.

die helide vermezzen,
the heroes bold,

die die slege niht vermiden,
who the blows not avoided,

die heten grôze angest liden
they had great fear suffered

unde vile michel nôt.
and very great distress.

die ander die dâ lâgen tôt
the others who there lay dead

die wâren unzalaht.
they were countless.

dô die hêren uber naht
when the lords over night

gerûweten und gelâgen,
rested and lay,

unz sie den tach gesâgen
until they the day saw

und zesamene quâmen
and together came

und die rede vernamen,
and the tidings heard,

daz Turnûs dannen was gevarn
that Turnus thence was fared

und dâ was dehein barn,
and there was no child,

der wiste wâ her wâre:
who knew where he were:

do geviel in daz mâre
then pleased them the tidings

ein teil ubellîche.
a part ill.

dâ wâren vorsten rîche
there were princes rich

und ander helide gûte:
and other heroes good:

dô wart in des ze mûte
then became to-them of-that in mind

den edelen wîganden,
the noble warriors,

daz si boten sanden
that they messengers sent

Ênêase dem mâren,
to-Aeneas the famous,

einem helide offenbâren,
a hero manifest,

unde gâben ime frede
and gave to-him peace

ûf bescheidene rede
upon definite terms

uber vierzehen naht.
over fourteen nights.

des wârens alle bedaht.
of-that were-they all minded.

die botschaft warb Âventînûs.
the message carried Aventinus.

si enboten ime, ob Turnûs
they sent-word to-him, if Turnus

niht ne quâme in den stunden,
not — should-come in the times,

daz si ime wole gunden,
that they to-him well granted,

daz her daz wîb behielde
that he the woman kept

und des landes gewielde
and of-the land ruled

und mit genâden solde leben.
and with grace should live.

alsô wart der fride gegeben
so was the peace given

enbeidenthalben unde gesworen.
on-both-sides and sworn.

manech helt wol geboren
many-a hero well born

was dâ von manegen landen.
was there from many lands.

ir tôten sie verbranden,
their dead they burned,

alsô man dô phlach,
as one then was-wont,

der dâ vil erslagen lach.
of-whom there many slain lay.

Dô ez alsô geredet was,
When it so spoken was,

dô ne wolde Ênêas
then — would Aeneas

Pallantem den werden
Pallas the worthy

niht lâzen der erden
not let to-the earth

begraben noch verbrinnen.
buried nor burned.

vor jâmer und vor minnen
for misery and for love

sîme vater hern sande
to-his father he-him sent

wider heim ze lande
back home to land

harde hêrlîche.
very lordly.

Ênêas der rîche,
Aeneas the rich,

der hetes grôze rouwe.
he had-of-it great rue.

man mohte sîne trouwe
one might his faith

dar ane wole merken.
there in well mark.

ein bâre hiezer werken,
a bier bade-he make,

die besten die man ie gesach,
the best that one ever saw,

dâ der hêre ûffe lach
where the lord upon lay

der junge kunich Pallas.
the young king Pallas.

vil wole sie gemeistert was.
very well it masterfully-made was.

Nu vernemet von der bâren.
Now hear of the bier.

die lin boumîn wâren
whose poles wooden were

und von helfenbeine.
and of ivory.

edeler gesteine
of-noble gems

stunt dar ane ein michel teil.
stood there on a great part.

sîdîn wâren diu seil,
silken were the ropes,

dâ mite sie gebunden was.
there with it bound was.

dar ûf legete Ênêas
there upon laid Aeneas

einen kolter von samîde rôt.
a quilt of samite red.

daz wart getân als her gebôt.
that was done as he commanded.

ûf dem kolter rôten
on the quilt red

lach der edele tôte,
lay the noble dead-one,

Pallas sîn geselle.
Pallas his companion.

ein vil tûre phelle
a very precious silk-cloth

breiten unde langen
broad and long

uber den helt gehangen
over the hero hung

Pallantem den jungelink.
Pallas the youngling.

allez meisterde daz dink
all mastered the thing

der Troiâre Ênêas,
the Trojan Aeneas,

der es vile unfrô was,
who of-it very unglad was,

daz der helt was erslagen.
that the hero was slain.

sêre begunde her in klagen,
sorely began he him to-lament,

ê hern sande dannen
ere he-him sent thence

mit sînes vater mannen
with his father's men

und ouch mit den sînen.
and also with the his-own.

her liez ez wole schînen,
he let it well appear,

daz nie mêr dehein vart
that never more any journey

sîme herzen leider wart,
to-his heart more-grievous became,

dem edelen Troiâne.
to-the noble Trojan.

zwei ros kastelâne
two horses destriers

tet man zû der bâren.
put one to the bier.

die dâ gereit wâren,
which there ready were,

Pallases holden,
Pallas's liegemen,

und si dan varen solden
and they thence fare should

unde daz beredet was,
and that agreed was,

dô sande Ênêas
then sent Aeneas

driu hundert sîner manne
three hundred of-his men

gewâfent mit im danne.
armed with him thence.

The Lament for Pallas

XXXV

Aeneas laments Pallas over the bier, praising his virtues, until his men pull him away for grieving like a child. He sends home the thirty horses and more, the more than twenty shields, and the arms Pallas won that day. Evander and the queen mourn their only son: the king grieves that his realm has no heir, and the queen curses Aeneas and the gods she served. Pallas is washed with wine, anointed with balsam, crowned, and laid in a vault the king had made for himself.

Ênêas der hêre
Aeneas the lord

der klagete vile sêre
he lamented very sorely

sînen lieben vehtgenôz.
his dear fight-fellow.

sîn rouwe diu was vile grôz
his rue it was very great

und sînes herzen ungemach. 8025
and his heart's discomfort.

sêre weinder unde sprach
sorely wept-he and spoke

‚edel ritter Pallas,
‚noble knight Pallas,

wie ubel diu stunde was,
how evil the hour was,

daz dû worde erslagen!
that thou wert slain!

ichn mach dich nimmer verklagen, 8030
I can thee never fully-lament,

daz wil ich wole sprechen.
that will I well speak.

ne soldich dich niht rechen
— should-I thee not avenge

an dem, der dir den lîb nam,
on him, who from-thee the life took,

sô woldich immer wesen gram
so would-I ever be hostile

den goten mînen mâgen,
to-the gods my kinsmen,

die dîn sô ubile phlâgen,
who of-thee so ill took-care,

daz dû verlore dîn leben.
that thou lost thy life.

wolden sie mir immer iht gegeben
would they to-me ever anything give

und heten mir dîn gegunnen,
and had to-me thee granted,

ich hete wol gewunnen
I had well won

mîn wîb unde mîn lant.
my woman and my land.

der dich dâ here hât gesant,
he-who thee there hither has sent,

dîn vater und diu mûter dîn,
thy father and the mother thine,

sie soln immer unfrô sîn
they shall ever unglad be

unz an ir lîbes ende,
until to their life's end,

daz ich dich wider sende
that I thee back send

alsus jâmerlîche‘
thus wretchedly‘

sprach Ênêas der rîche.
spoke Aeneas the rich.

,ichn hete niht gelobet daz,
,I had not vowed that,

ich solt dîn hân gehûtet baz
I should thee have guarded better

in stormen und in strîten.
in assaults and in fights.

nû unde zallen zîten
now and at-all times

solde ich dîn wol hân gephlegen,
should I of-thee well have taken-care,

schônez bilde, reiner degen!
beautiful image, pure warrior!

waz ich in korzen stunden
what I in short hours

tugende an dir hân vunden,
of-virtues in thee have found,

manheit unde sinne,
manhood and senses,

trouwe unde minne,
faith and love,

kûnheit unde mannes rât
boldness and man's counsel

und willich herze zû der tât,
and willing heart to the deed,

gûte liste unde grôze kraft!
good craft and great strength!

dû wâre stâte und ernisthaft,
thou wert steadfast and earnest,

milde und reinmûte.
generous and pure-minded.

dû hetest side gûte
thou hadst manners good

und aller tugende genûch,
and of-all virtues enough,

mêr dan der dich dâ slûch,
more than he-who thee there slew,

wan daz ez alsô mûste wesen,
save that it so must be,

daz dû ne soldest niht genesen
that thou — shouldst not recover

zû dem urteile.
to the judgment.

von mînem unheile
from my misfortune

hâstû dînen lîb verloren.
hast-thou thy life lost.

jâ wart von mûter nie geboren
yea was of mother never born

dehein kint von dîner jugende,
no child of thy youth,

daz mêr hete tugende,
that more had virtues,

frîgez herze; helt balt.
free heart; hero bold.

dû ne wâre niht alt
thou — wert not old

sibenzehen jâre!'
seventeen years!'

dô viel her ûf die bâre,
then fell he upon the bier,

mit den armen her si umbevienk,
with the arms he it embraced,

vaste her dar ane hienk,
firmly he there on hung,

sêre er weinen began,
sorely he to-weep began,

unze in sîne wîse man
until him his wise men

mit gwalde dar von brâchen
with force there from broke

unde im zû sprâchen
and to-him to spoke

ein teil zorenlîche,
a part angrily,

daz der hêre rîche
that the lord rich

sîn dink sô kintlîch ane vienk
his thing so childishly on undertook

und solhen jâmer begienk.
and such misery committed.

Dô hiez bringen Ênêas
Then bade bring Aeneas

al diu ros, diu Pallas
all the horses, which Pallas

des tages hete gewunnen,
of-the day had won,

dô her hete begunnen
when he had begun

alrêrst manheite.
first-of-all manhood.

der was wol gereite
of-them was well counted

drîzich unde mêre.
thirty and more.

dô klagete in vil sêre
then lamented him very sorely

Ênêas der milde.
Aeneas the generous.

dô hiezer im die schilde
then bade-he for-him the shields

aller der rittere tragen,
of-all the knights carry,

dier des tages hete erslagen
whom-he of-the day had slain

der junge kunich Pallas.
the young king Pallas.

mêr danne zweinzich der was,
more than twenty of-them was,

ob uns daz bûch niene louch.
if us the book not-at-all lied.

der ritter wâfen iesch er ouch,
the knights' arms demanded he also,

dier des tages hete gevangen:
whom-he of-the day had captured:

diu hiez her dâ bî hangen.
them bade he there by hang.

mit im her al daz sande
with him he all that sent

sîme vater heim ze lande,
to-his father home to land,

der vil unfrô wart.
who very unglad became.

dô hûben sich an die vart
then raised themselves on the journey

die lûte mit der bâren,
the people with the bier,

die vil trûrich wâren,
who very sorrowful were,

daz man gelouben wole mach.
that one believe well may.

si fûren naht unde tach,
they fared night and day,

unz sie ze lande quâmen.
until they to land came.

dô daz mâre vernâmen
when the tidings heard

die lûte von dem lande,
the people of the land,

dâ man den helt erkande,
where one the hero knew,

daz der junge Pallas
that the young Pallas

des kuneges sun tôt was,
the king's son dead was,

umbe ir lieben hûsgenôz
about their dear house-fellow

was der jâmer vile grôz,
was the misery very great,

daz nie ûf der erden
that never on the earth

grôzer endorfte werden.
greater needed become.

Daz mâre sô verre quam,
The tidings so far came,

daz ez der kunich wol vernam
that it the king well heard

und diu kuniginne,
and the queen,

die getrouwelîche minne
who faithful love

zû zir sune trûgen.
to their son bore.

die hende sie slûgen,
the hands they struck,

vil sêre sie weinden,
very sorely they wept,

wol si daz bescheinden,
well they that showed,

daz in der sun lieb was.
that to-them the son dear was.

‚schôner sun Pallas'
‚beautiful son Pallas'

sprach der kunech Êvander,
spoke the king Evander,

‚nune weiz nieman ander
‚now knows no-one other

wan ich alders eine,
save I all alone,

mit welhen rouwen ich weine:
with what rue I weep:

lieber sun junge,
dear son young,

ezn mohte dehein zunge
it might no tongue

rehte gesagen nieht.
rightly tell at-all.

dû wâre mîme herzen ein lieht,
thou wert to-my heart a light,

daz nû vil gar erloschen is.
which now very wholly extinguished is.

wie mohte ich des sîn gewis,
how might I of-it be certain,

daz dû mir sus soldes wider komen?
that thou to-me thus shouldst back come?

nû is mir immer mêr benomen
now is from-me ever more taken

froude unde wunne.
joy and bliss.

ichn hân in mîme kunne
I have in my kin

deheinen frunt ze erbe.
no friend as heir.

swenne sô ich sterbe
whenever so I die

(daz̨ mûz̨ nû vil schiere sîn),
(that must now very quickly be),

Pallas lieber sun mîn,
Pallas dear son mine,

sô blîbet mîn rîche erbelôs.
so remains my realm heirless.

ôwê daz̨ ich dich ie verlôs
alas that I thee ever lost

und wê daz̨ ich dich ie gewan!
and woe that I thee ever won!

dû wâre ein kint und ein man,
thou wert a child and a man,

daz̨ unstadelîch was.
which unsteady was.

lieber sun Pallas,
dear son Pallas,

dû wâre ze frumich alze frû,
thou wert too valiant all-too early,

dir gienk unmâz̨e zû
to-thee went beyond-measure to

dîn tugent unde dîn sin.
thy virtue and thy sense.

des ich vile unfrô bin
of-which I very unglad am

und immer trûrich sal sîn.
and ever sorrowful shall be.

einiger sun mîn,
only son mine,

dû worde mir zunheile geboren:
thou wert to-me to-misfortune born:

nû ich dich sal hân verloren,
now I thee shall have lost,

daz mûz ich immer wole klagen.‘
that must I ever well lament.‘

dô braht man in dar zû getragen
then brought one him there to carried

mit michelme sêre.
with great pain.

dô man den helt hêre
when one the hero lordly

vor sînen vater hete braht,
before his father had brought,

dô viel der kunech in unmaht
then fell the king in swoon

und diu frouwe lussam,
and the lady lovely,

dô ir sun dar tôt quam.
when her son thither dead came.

Der kunich weinete sêre
The king wept sorely

und diu kuniginne hêre.
and the queen lordly.

‚Pallas‘ sprach si ‚lieber sun,
‚Pallas‘ spoke she ‚dear son,

wie sal ich immer daz getûn?
how shall I ever that do?

soldich nâch dîme tôde leben,
should-I after thy death live,

wer mohte mir daz herze geben?
who might to-me the heart give?

ez wâre unrehte getân.
it were wrongly done.

Ênêas der Troiân,
Aeneas the Trojan,

der vil ungetrouwe,
the very faithless-one,

der hât mir grôze rouwe
he has to-me great rue

an mîn herze gesant.
into my heart sent.

daz her ie quam in ditze lant,
that he ever came into this land,

des mûzer sîn verwâzen.
of-that must-he be cursed.

het er dich hie verlâzen,
had he thee here left,

dîn vater, als ich ime riet,
thy father, as I to-him counseled,

sone lâgest dû hie tôt niet.
so layest thou here dead not.

ichn mohtez niht erwenden,
I might-it not avert,

hern wolde dich dar senden,
he would thee thither send,

ez ne dûhte mich niht gût.
it — seemed to-me not good.

ez quam mir wol in mînen mût,
it came to-me well into my spirit,

als ich ez nû wol hân vernomen,
as I it now well have heard,

dune wârest nie dâ hin komen,
thou wert never there thither come,

mohte ich dirz hân verboten.
might I to-thee-it have forbidden.

nû mûz ich flûchen den goten,
now must I curse the gods,

den ich diende al mîn leben
whom I served all my life

und mîn opher hân gegeben,
and my offering have given,

daz sie dich behûten, liebez kint.
that they thee guard, dear child.

si wâren toub unde blint,
they were deaf and blind,

daz sie dîn niht ne phlâgen
that they of-thee not — took-care

noch dich niht besâgen
nor thee not looked-to

noch mîn gebete enhôrden.
nor my prayer heard.

mit werken joch mit worden
with works and with words

diendich in naht unde tach,
served-I them night and day,

daz ich nû wol klagen mach:
that I now well lament may:

sine gewinnent nimmer mêre
they win never more

dienest noch êre
service nor honor

von mir armen wîbe
from me poor woman

in allem mînem lîbe,
in all my life,

daz wil ich immer sprechen,
that will I ever speak,

ezn sî daz sie mich rechen
unless-it be that they me avenge

an Ênêase dem Troiân;
on Aeneas the Trojan;

der dich liez ze tôde slân,
who thee let to death slay,

daz er dir ze helfe niene quam.
that-he to-thee to help not-at-all came.

dô man dir daz leben nam, 8220
when one from-thee the life took,

was her dô entslâfen?
was he then fallen-asleep?

waz helfent disiu wâfen,
what help these arms,

disiu ros und diz gewant,
these horses and this clothing,

daz her uns here hât gesant,
which he to-us hither has sent,

daz dû gewunne, sun mîn? 8225
which thou wonnest, son mine?

deste unfrôr mûz ich sîn
the-more ungladder must I be

dîner reinen jugende,
of-thy pure youth,

sô ich dîner tugende
when I of-thy virtue

und dîner frumekeite
and of-thy valor

mit der wârheite 8230
with the truth

ie mêre hôre zellen.
ever more hear tell.

got mûze den vellen,
God may him fell,

der dich, trût sun, erslûch.
who thee, dear son, slew.

ôwê daz ich dich ie getrûch.‘
alas that I thee ever bore.‘

Dô si geklaget hete genûch,
When she lamented had enough,

ein gegarewe man dar vore trûch
a ready man there before carried

rîlîch unde scône,
richly and fair,

ein zeptrum und ein crône
a scepter and a crown

und ein goldîn vingerlîn.
and a golden little-ring.

der kunich hiez den sun sîn
the king bade the son his

nemen von der bâren.
take from the bier.

die lûte, die dâ wâren,
the people, who there were,

schiere sin enbunden.
quickly they-him unbound.

dô hiezer im die wunden
then bade-he for-him the wounds

mit wîne und mit pigmente twân.
with wine and with spiced-wine wash.

daz wart schiere getân.
that was quickly done.

an in streich man dar nâ
on him rubbed one there after

balsam und arômatâ,
balsam and aromatics,

man salbete in mit beiden.
one anointed him with both.

dar nâ hiez her in kleiden
there after bade he him clothe

nâch dem kunichlîchem site.
after the kingly custom.

man kleidete in dermite
one clothed him there-with

zierlîche unde schône.
elegantly and fair.

ein goldîne krône
a golden crown

sazte man im ûf daz houbet,
set one to-him on the head,

daz wizzet unde geloubet,
that know and believe,

ein zeptrum gab man im in die hant.
a scepter gave one to-him into the hand.

dô heten sie den wîgant
then had they the warrior

in ir templum getragen.
into their temple carried.

dâ was weinen unde klagen
there was weeping and lament

umbe den helt werden.
about the hero worthy.

do bestatte man in zer erden
then laid one him to-the earth

harde hêrlîche.
very lordly.

dô hete der kunich rîche
then had the king rich

ein grab geheizen machen
a grave bidden make

mit zierlîchen sachen
with elegant things

in einem gewelbe,
in a vault,

aldâ der kunich selbe
where the king self

inne wolde sîn gelegen:
in would be laid:

dâ wart geleget der junge degen,
there was laid the young warrior,

der mâre helt Pallas,
the famous hero Pallas,

umb den ez michel schade was.
about whom it great harm was.

The Tomb of Pallas, and Latinus's Counsel

XXXVI

The vault is described: crystal, jasper, and coral, a coffin of prase on porphyry pillars, two vessels of balsam and aloe, an epitaph on an amethyst, and a jacinth lamp with an asbestos wick that burned until the tomb was opened more than two thousand years later, in Emperor Frederick's time. The Trojan escort returns. Turnus is back and angry at the truce. Latinus tells his council that he wants peace with Aeneas, offering him Tuscany, or ships and treasure if he will leave.

Daz gewelbe was lussam,
The vault was lovely,

so ez dem hêren wol gezam,
as it to-the lord well befitted,

dâ Pallas inne lach,
where Pallas inside lay,

und stunt, als ich û sagen mach,
and stood, as I to-you tell may,

bî ir synagôge,
by their synagogue,

sinwel und niht hôge,
round and not high,

und was geworht mit sinne
and was wrought with sense

und wol gezieret inne.
and well adorned inside.

und was betalle hêrlîch.
and was wholly lordly.

nidene was der esterîch
below was the pavement

von lûtern cristallen
of clear crystals

und jaspide und corallen.
and jasper and corals.

die sûle marmelsteine,
the pillars marble-stones,

die wende von helfenbeine,
the walls of ivory,

dar inne stunt manch edel stein.
there in stood many-a noble stone.

diu sunne niender drîn schein
the sun nowhere therein shone

noch neheines tages lieht,
nor no day's light,

wan da ne was vinster inne nieht.
yet there — was dark inside not.

daz himelze was obene
the canopy was above

gemachet wol ze lobene
made well to praise

wol gemischet mit golde,
well mixed with gold,

dar inne er ligen solde
where in he lie should

Pallas der starke.
Pallas the strong.

in mitten stunt der sarke
in middle stood the coffin

ûffe vier phîlâren,
upon four pillars,

die von porfiere wâren
which of porphyry were

misselîche gevar.
variously colored.

si wâren verre komen dar,
they were far come thither,

si wâren veste unde hart.
they were firm and hard.

der stein, dar în geleget wart
the stone, there into laid was

Pallas der kûne,
Pallas the bold,

der was ein prasîn grûne
it was a prase green

ergraben wol mit sinne.
engraved well with sense.

bî ime stunden drinne
by him stood therein

zwei vaz vil gefûge
two vessels very fitting

als zwêne wênege krûge,
as two little jugs,

wandez der kunich wolde.
for-it the king would.

der eine was von golde,
the one was of gold,

daz solt ir wizzen âne wân,
that shall you know without doubt,

und was vol balsame getân.
and was full of-balsam done.

der ander was ein edel stein.
the other was a noble stone.

vil wol daz dar ane schein,
very well that there on shone,

daz der helt Pallas
that the hero Pallas

des kuneges lieber sun was.
the king's dear son was.

der stein was innen hol
the stone was inside hollow

unde was alôês vol
and was of-aloe full

unde zerbentîne.
and of-turpentine.

der stein was ein sardîne,
the stone was a sard,

der niht bezzer mohte sîn.
which not better might be.

dô gienk ein rôre goldîn
then went a pipe golden

ûz iewederm vatte,
out-of each vessel,

diu man bî im satte,
which one by him set,

deme helede lussam,
to-the hero lovely,

diu im in sînen lîkham
which to-him into his body

den rouch dar in trûch.
the smoke there in carried.

daz was hêrlîch genûch
that was lordly enough

gemachet al mit liste.
made all with craft.

ein edel amatiste
a noble amethyst

was der stein der drûffe lach.
was the stone which thereon lay.

dar an stunt als man wol gesach
there on stood as one well saw

sîn epitaphium gescriben.
his epitaph written.

und wie her tôt was gebliben
and how he dead was remained

und wie her hiez und wer her was,
and how he was-called and who he was,

des kuneges sun Pallas,
the king's son Pallas,

und wie in Turnûs erslûch
and how him Turnus slew

des êrsten tages dô her trûch
of-the first day when he bore

schilt und wâfen unde swert.
shield and arms and sword.

her was der êren wole wert,
he was of-the honors well worthy,

die sie ime tâten.
which they to-him did.

ez het wol gerâten
it had well counseled

Êvander der rîche.
Evander the rich.

der gienk hêrlîche
he went lordly

opheren sînen goten.
offer to-his gods.

dô wart uber al geboten,
then was over all commanded,

daz si mûsten alsam tûn.
that they must likewise do.

dô der kunich sînen sun
when the king his son

alsô hete begangen,
so had celebrated,

ein lampade wart dô gehangen
a lamp was then hung

uber Pallases grab,
over Pallas's grave,

diu liehtes genûch gab,
which of-light enough gave,

sint daz si wart entbrant.
since that it was kindled.

diu lampade was ein jachant,
the lamp was a jacinth,

sie ne was niht glas.
it — was not glass.

daz ole daz dar inne was
the oil that there in was

daz was balsam vile gût,
that was balsam very good,

der jachant rôt als ein blût.
the jacinth red as a blood.

diu ketene was rôt golt.
the chain was red gold.

nû ir ez vernemen solt
now you it hear shall

als ich ez gelêret bin:
as I it taught am:

eine wiken tet man dar in
a wick did one there into

seltseine unde schône,
rare and fair,

von eime bestêône,
from an asbestos,

einem edelen steine,
a noble stone,

niht ze grôz noch ze kleine.
not too great nor too small.

der stein is vile tûre,
the stone is very precious,

her brinnet in dem fûre
it burns in the fire

immer unde immer,
ever and ever,

sô daz her nimmer
so that it never

niht erleschen ne mach.
not be-quenched — may.

ez werte unze an den tach,
it lasted until to the day,

daz Pallas dâ wart funden.
that Pallas there was found.

daz geschach sint in den stunden,
that happened since in the times,

daz der keiser Friderîch
that the emperor Frederick

der lobebâre vorste rîch
the praiseworthy prince rich

ze Rôme gewîhet wart
at Rome consecrated was

nâch sîner êrsten hervart,
after his first campaign,

die er fûr uber berge
which he fared over mountains

mit maneger halsberge
with many-a hauberk

ze Lankparten in daz lant.
to Lombardy into the land.

sint vant man den wîgant
since found one the warrior

Pallantem in deme grabe,
Pallas in the grave,

dâ wir haben gesaget abe.
where we have told of.

daz enis gelogen nieht.
that is lied not.

dannoch bran daz lieht,
still burned the light,

daz sîn vater dar in gab,
which his father there into gave,

dô geleget wart in daz grab
when laid was into the grave

der junge kunich Pallas.
the young king Pallas.

vil michel wunder daz was,
very great wonder that was,

daz daz lieht werde
that the light precious

bran under der erde
burned under the earth

alsô manegen tach
so many-a day

aldâ Pallas lach,
where Pallas lay,

daz wir wizzen vor wâr,
that we know for true,

mêr dan zwei tûsent jâr,
more than two thousand years,

unze man Pallantem vant,
until one Pallas found,

und dannoch was unverbrant,
and still was unburned,

dô man die gruft engrûb
when one the vault dug-open

und den stein ûf hûb
and the stone up lifted

und der wint drin slûch,
and the wind therein struck,

daz is wizzenlîch genûch,
that is known enough,

do erlasch ez von dem winde.
then went-out it from the wind.

man sach an dem ende
one saw at the end

den rouch und den aschen
the smoke and the ashes

und den stein unverlaschen.
and the stone unquenched.

Dô der hêre Pallas
When the lord Pallas

alsô bestatet was,
so laid-to-rest was,

als man û sagete dâ bevor,
as one to-you told there before,

dô wart vermûret daz tor
then was walled-up the gate

mit kalke und mit steinen
with lime and with stones

grôzen unde kleinen,
great and small,

die veste wâren unde hart.
which firm were and hard.

sint daz der mortar troken wart,
since that the mortar dry became,

son mohte man sîn niht gebrechen.
so might one it not break.

alsô hôrde ich sprechen,
so heard I speak,

daz ez wâr wâre.
that it true were.

dô wârn dâ die Troiâre,
then were there the Trojans,

die Ênêas der wîgant
whom Aeneas the warrior

mit ime dar hete gesant,
with him thither had sent,

vor den kunich si quâmen,
before the king they came,

urloub sie dô nâmen,
leave they then took,

si wolden dannen kêren
they would thence turn

zÊnêase ir hêren,
to-Aeneas their lord,

alse si dô tâten.
as they then did.

dô hete sich berâten
then had himself counseled

der ander kunich Lâtîn,
the other king Latinus,

her und die frunt sîn,
he and the friends his,

daz her boten sande
that he messengers sent

nâch sîn mannen after lande
after his men through land

und si zime komen bat
and them to-him come asked

ze Laurente an eine stat.
at Laurentum to a place.

dar quâmen sie als her gebôt.
thither came they as he commanded.

dô klagete her in sîne nôt,
then lamented he to-them his distress,

alsô her wol mûste,
as he well must,

daz man sîn rîche wûste,
that one his realm laid-waste,

daz ouch sie heten vernomen.
which also they had heard.

dô was ouch Turnûs wider komen,
then was also Turnus back come,

dem was leit unde zoren,
to-whom was grievous and wrath,

daz der fride was gesworen
that the peace was sworn

und sô lange werde.
and so long lasted.

harde her des gerde,
very-much he of-that desired,

daz der fride ende nâme
that the peace end took

unde ez dar zû quâme,
and it there to should-come,

daz her die Troiâne
that he the Trojans

vienge ûf Montalbâne,
caught on Montalbane,

die ime leide heten getân.
who to-him sorrow had done.

desn wolde aber im niht gestân
of-that would but to-him not consent

Lâtînûs der rîche,
Latinus the rich,

daz sprach her ernestlîche.
that spoke he earnestly.

Dô sprach offenbâre
Then spoke openly

Lâtînûs der mâre
Latinus the famous

sînen mannen ernesthafte zû
to-his men earnestly to

‚nu râtet mir waz ich tû,
‚now counsel me what I do,

al die lieben frunt mîn,
all the dear friends mine,

die mir getrouwe wellen sîn.
who to-me faithful will be.

nû sehet ir wol wie ez mir stêt,
now see you well how it to-me stands,

daz mîn lant sus ze schanden gêt.
that my land thus to disgrace goes.

nune wil ich ez niht mêre dolen,
now will I it not more endure,

daz sî û allen unverholen,
that be to-you all unconcealed,

ich wil ez wol behûten
I will it well guard

und wil idoch mit gûten
and will yet with good

ze Ênêase kêren
to Aeneas turn

und in dâ mit êren
and him there with honor

gerne behalden,
gladly keep,

den kûnen helt balden,
the bold hero brave,

wandich im wol gûtes gan.
for-I to-him well good grant.

her is ein wol geboren man
he is a well born man

von der gote geslehte.
of the gods' lineage.

ir solt ez merken rehte:
you shall it mark rightly:

si hazzent den der im leide tût,
they hate him who to-him sorrow does,

die uns ubel unde gût
who to-us evil and good

beidiu wole mogen tûn.
both well may do.

wâre Turnûs mîn sun,
were Turnus my son,

ich ne wolde im nimmer gestân
I — would to-him never consent

ze vehten wider den Troiân,
to fight against the Trojan,

want der sige is ime geslaht.
for the victory is to-him natural.

ich sage û wes ich hân gedaht,
I tell you what I have thought,

daz ich dem Troiâne
that I to-the Trojan

daz lant zû Tuscâne
the land at Tuscany

wil lîhen ob herz wil enphân,
will grant if he-it will receive,

ez is ein lant sô getân,
it is a land so made,

daz ich es lutzel ie genôz,
that I of-it little ever enjoyed,

und is doch wît unde grôz.
and is yet wide and great.

des wil ich wol getrouwen,
of-that will I well trust,

wirt ez rehte erbouwen,
becomes it rightly tilled,

ez sal ein gût lant sîn.
it shall a good land be.

korn obez unde wîn
grain fruit and wine

wehset gnûch dar inne,
grows enough there in,

is't daz manz rehte winne.
(if)-is that one-it rightly win.

ouch sage ich û daz vor wâr,
also tell I to-you that for true,

ich wil daz man mit rehte var
I will that one with right fare

und ze fûgen bescheide,
and to fittings settle,

unde sich die hêren beide
and themselves the lords both

bedenken dar enbinnen
bethink there within

und nâch mînen sinnen
and after my senses

und mîner frunt und mîner man.
and of-my friends and of-my men.

swer uns dar zû gerâten kan,
whoever us there to counsel can,

der salz uns helfen fûgen,
he shall-it us help join,

wir haben schaden genûgen
we have harm enough

und ein michel teil ze vil,
and a great part too much,

ob Ênêas des gevolgen wil.
if Aeneas of-that follow will.

ne wil aber her des niht,
— will but he of-that not,

daz her des offenbâre giht,
that he of-that openly avows,

daz her von uns wil kêren:
that he from us will turn:

sô soln wir in mit êren
so shall we him with honor

von uns hinnen senden
from us hence send

swar sô her wil wenden,
whither so he will turn,

schaffen sîne sache.
make his matter.

wir soln im heizen machen
we shall for-him bid make

nûwiu schif und gûte,
new ships and good,

des is mir ze mûte,
of-that is to-me in mind,

als manech sô im wart verbrant.
as many as for-him were burned.

ich wil im schaz unde gewant
I will to-him treasure and clothing

und spîse bieten alsô vil,
and food offer so much,

alser selbe nemen wil.
as-he self take will.

daz wil ich ime gerne geben
that will I to-him gladly give

und wil mit gemache leben,
and will with ease live,

ob ir ez râtet alle.
if you it counsel all.

nû sprechet wie û daz gevalle.‘
now speak how to-you that please.‘

Drances Against Turnus

XXXVII

Drances, wise and rich but no fighter, answers the king: Turnus was sworn Lavinia against Latinus's will, Aeneas came after and was promised the daughter and the realm, so let the two fight alone instead of having the innocent slain. The council agrees. Turnus mocks Drances's unharmed shield and his horse made for flight, and accepts the combat; Drances will not die for Turnus's goods. Latinus means to send word to Aeneas, but news comes that the Trojans have attacked Turnus's army, and the council breaks up.

Dô der kunich mâre
When the king famous

sîn man offenbâre
his men openly

rât gefrâget habete des,
counsel asked had of-it,

dô was dâ hêr Drances
then was there sir Drances

ein harde gehovet man,
a very courtly man,

dem kunege her antworden began.
to-the king he to-answer began.

her was wîse und rîche
he was wise and rich

und was gezogenlîche,
and was well-bred,

verwizzen unde redehaht,
knowing and eloquent,

niwan daz her ungerne vaht
except that he unwillingly fought

unde gerne hete gemach,
and gladly had ease,

daz was daz man von ime sprach
that was what one of him said

des ergisten des her wart gezigen.
the worst of-which he was accused.

dô d'andern hêren alle swigen,
when the-other lords all were-silent,

dô sprach offenbâre
then spoke openly

Drances der mâre
Drances the famous

,Lâtîn kunich hêre,
,Latinus king lordly,

der rede habet ir êre
of-the speech have you honor

der ir nû habet begunnen.
which you now have begun.

alle die û gûtes gunnen,
all who to-you good grant,

si soln û helfen dar zû.
they shall you help there to.

daz ich dise unzuht tû,
that I this rudeness do,

daz wil ich bûzen her nâch,
that will I atone here after,

daz mir zer rede is sô gâch
that to-me to-the speech is so hasty

und ze mînen worden.
and to my words.

ich wil û antworden
I will you answer

vor disen hêren allen;
before these lords all;

ezn darf û niht missevallen,
it needs you not displease,

al sî ez ungezogenheit.
all be it ill-breeding.

ich wil û sagen die wârheit,
I will to-you tell the truth,

sô ich allerbeste kan.
as I very-best can.

Turnûs is ein edele man
Turnus is a noble man

unde ein vorste lussam.
and a prince lovely.

her is mir âne scholde gram,
he is to-me without cause hostile,

daz weiz ich wol nû manegen tach,
that know I well now many-a day,

und tûn doch sô ich beste mach,
and do yet as I best may,

alser selbe wol gesiht.
as-he self well sees.

ouch ne hân ich von im niht
also — have I from him nothing

weder erbe noch lêhen.
neither inheritance nor fief.

ich ne darf in niht flêhen,
I — need him not beseech,

ich bin, hêre, ûwer man.
I am, lord, your man.

swâ ich iht bedenken kan
wherever I anything think can

ûwers frumen und ûwer êren,
of-your profit and your honor,

dâ zû wil ich kêren
there to will I turn

mîn herze unde mînen sin,
my heart and my sense,

als ich û von rehte schuldich bin.
as I to-you by right bound am.

ez is harde wol getân,
it is very well done,

daz ir ûch wider den Troiân,
that you yourselves with the Trojan,

Ênêam den kûnen,
Aeneas the bold,

mit minnen wellct sûnen
with love will reconcile

unde daz urlouge frëden,
and the war make-peace,

dazn sal nieman widerreden,
that shall no-one gainsay,

dorch den irz immer lâzet.
for whom you-it ever let.

iedoch ir vergâzet
yet you forget

einer rede diu mich dunket gût,
a speech which me seems good,

daz râte ich daz ir daz noch tût:
that counsel I that you that still do:

ez wizzent wole ûwer man,
it know well your men,

wie daz urlouge began
how the war began

unde wiez her zû is komen,
and how-it hither to is come,

daz ir schaden habet genomen,
that you harm have taken,

den ir ubele moget verklagen,
which you ill may get-over,

daz ûwer lûte sint erslagen
that your people are slain

und verbrunnen manech hûs.
and burned many-a house.

man weiz wol daz Turnûs
one knows well that Turnus

ûwer tohter geswûr,
your daughter swore,

dâ her unrehte ane fûr,
where he wrongly on fared,

do ez ûwer wille niene was.
when it your will not-at-all was.

man weiz ouch wol daz Ênêas
one knows also well that Aeneas

dar nâch in daz lant quam,
there after into the land came,

der mâre helt lussam,
the famous hero lovely,

von troischeme lande
from Trojan land

und û sîn boten sande,
and to-you his messengers sent,

die ir êrhafte liezet
whom you honorably let

unde im ouch gehiezet
and to-him also promised

ûwer tohter ze gebene
your daughter to give

und nâch ûwerm lebene
and after your life

allez ûwer rîche.
all your realm.

nû tût hêrlîche
now do lordly

(sprach her), lieber hêre mîn,
(spoke he), dear lord mine,

nû si bêde wellent sîn
now they both will be

umb ûwer tohter gewis,
about your daughter certain,

nâch diu und ez komen is,
after that and it come is,

sô dunket mich daz vile gût,
so seems to-me that very good,

daz ir eine wîs tût,
that you one way do,

ob ez wol gevalle
if it well please

disen forsten allen
these princes all

und andern gûten knehten,
and other good knights,

sô râte ich daz si vehten
so counsel I that they fight

si zwêne alders eine,
they two all alone,

daz got daz reht bescheine,
that God the right show,

swem got der êren gunne
to-whomever God the honors grant

daz her den sige gewinne,
that he the victory win,

der habe daz rîche und die maget,
he have the realm and the maiden,

dâ ir ietweder ûf klaget.
which they each upon claim.

daz dunket mich baz getân,
that seems to-me better done,

dan man drumbe lâze slân
than one there-for let slay

unscholdige lûte,
innocent people,

und redet ez noch hûte,
and decide it still today,

ob ez dise hêren dunket gût,
if it these lords seems good,

sô râte ich daz ir ez tût,
so counsel I that you it do,

ichn wil michs nimmer geschamen.‘
I will me-of-it never be-ashamed.‘

dô sprâchens alle benamen
then spoke-they all assuredly

arme unde rîche
poor and rich

einmûtechlîche
unanimously

zû dem kunege offenbâre,
to the king openly,

daz daz gût wâre,
that that good were,

daz dâ sprach Drances.
what there spoke Drances.

der kunich gevolgete des.
the king followed of-that.

Dô antworde mit zorne
Then answered with wrath

Turnûs der wol geborne
Turnus the well born

‚got weiz‚ hêre Drances,
‚God knows, lord Drances,

ich getrouwete û wol des,
I trusted you well of-that,

daz ir ungerne sterbet
that you unwillingly die

und mînen schaden werbet
and my harm pursue

mit allen ûwern sinnen.
with all your senses.

ichn wil mit û gewinnen
I will with you win

neweder erbe noch wîb.
neither inheritance nor woman.

bewaret êt ir ûwern lîb,
guard just you your body,

als ir unz her habet getân,
as you till hither have done,

ir kunnet wol hin danne gân,
you can well away thence go,

dâ man ze sperewehsel gêt
where one to spear-exchange goes

und mit swerden sêre slêt,
and with swords sorely strikes,

irn rûchet wer da vehte,
you-not care who there fights,

und tût ouch lîhte rehte.
and do also perhaps right.

ûwer schilt is schône und gût,
your shield is fair and good,

den habet ir noch sô wol behût,
it have you still so well guarded,

daz her nie verwerdet wart;
that it never damaged became;

und ûwer helm is alsô hart,
and your helmet is so hard,

daz her sich nie gebouch:
that it itself never bent:

deste lieber is her û ouch.
the dearer is it to-you also.

her was ouch ie veste gnûch,
it was also ever firm enough,

swie vil man ûch drûf geslûch
however much one you thereon struck

oder mit steinen gewarf.
or with stones threw.

ûwer swert is ouch sô scharf,
your sword is also so sharp,

da irz an der hant trûget,
which you-it in the hand bear,

die ir dâ mite erslûget,
those-whom you there with slew,

daz der deheiner genas.
that of-them none survived.

daz wiste wol Ênêas,
that knew well Aeneas,

dar umbe gibet her û sîn gût,
there about gives he to-you his goods,

daz ir ime niene tût
that you to-him nothing do

und sîne lûte lâzet leben.
and his people let live.

ichn wil aber û niht geben,
I will but to-you nothing give,

ir moget die lûte sanfte slân,
you may the people gently slay,

wan ûwer ros is sô getân,
for your horse is so made,

swenne irz rûret mit den sporen,
whenever you-it spur with the spurs,

ez loufet allen den bevoren,
it runs all those before,

die û zû sprengen
who at-you to spring

die verre und ouch die lenge:
the far and also the length:

ez mach ûch vile wol getragen
it can you very well carry

und kan baz fliehen danne jagen,
and can better flee than hunt,

des im dicke nôt geschiht.
of-which to-it often need happens.

dazn rede ich dar umbe niht:
that speak I there about not:

wizzet des die wârheit,
know of-that the truth,

daz ich des kampfes bin gereit
that I of-the combat am ready

wider Ênêam den Troiân,
against Aeneas the Trojan,

ich getar in einen wol bestân,
I dare him alone well attack,

und sît gewis daz ich ez tû,
and be certain that I it do,

mach ich mit êren komen dar zû.‘
can I with honors come there to.‘

Drances der rîche
Drances the rich

sprach aber zorenlîche
spoke again angrily

ze Turnô deme herzogen
to Turnus the duke

‚irn habet ein hâr niht gelogen,
‚you have a hair not lied,

ich hân mich es vil wol behût,
I have myself of-it very well guarded,

ich enwil dorch ûwer gût
I will for your goods

nimmer unsenften slach enphân
never ungentle stroke receive

noch nieman ze dôde slân
nor no-one to death slay

noch verderben den lîb.
nor ruin the body.

hetet ir daz erbe und daz wîb
had you the inheritance and the woman

unde lâge ich dâ erslagen,
and lay I there slain,

ir soldet sanfte mich verklagen,
you should gently me fully-lament,

als die ander die dâ ligent tôt.
as the others who there lie dead.

ez is aber mir nehein nôt,
it is but to-me no need,

ichn vorhte ûch niht sô sêre,
I fear you not so sorely,

daz ich dorch ûwer êre
that I for your honor

mîns dankes iht sterbe.
of-my will at-all die.

welt aber ir daz erbe
will but you the inheritance

und die maget wol getân,
and the maiden well made,

sô mûzet ir Ênêam bestân
so must you Aeneas attack

und lâzet mich âne scholde:
and let me without blame:

ich enbir wol ûwer holde
I forgo well your favor

nû unde zallen zîten. 8705
now and at-all times.

swenne ir beginnet strîten
whenever you begin to-fight

wider den edelen Troiân,
against the noble Trojan,

moget ir iht gûtes denne geslân,
can you anything good then strike,

des wirdet û dan vile nôt.
of-that becomes to-you then very need.

swenner vor û geliget tôt 8710
when-he before you lies dead

oder sigelôs betalle,
or victoryless wholly,

sô tût daz û gevalle,
so do what you pleases,

swenne ir daz lant gewinnet
when you the land win

und die maget die ir minnet,
and the maiden whom you love,

die ir ûch mit rede anziet. 8715
whom you yourselves with speech claim.

ichn wil mich mit û schelden niet
I will myself with you quarrel not

hie in mînes hêren hûs.‘
here in my lord's house.‘

dô sprach aber Turnûs
then spoke again Turnus

‚ich bin noch als ich ê was.
‚I am still as I ere was.

getar der hêre Ênêas
dares the lord Aeneas

den kampf wider mich bestân,
the combat against me undertake,

ich wil mîn dink ane vân
I will my thing on take

als ich allerbeste mach.
as I very-best may.

mîn hêre maches einen tach
my lord make-it a day

und bringez ze tagedinge,
and bring-it to court-day,

ichn ger niht daz herz lenge
I desire not that he-it lengthen

mê wan uber eine naht.
more than over one night.

ich hân noch sin unde maht
I have still sense and might

unde lîb der mâzen,
and body in-the measure,

ichn wil mich niht lâzen
I will myself not let

lebendich enterben,
alive disinherit,

ich wolde ê selbe sterben.
I would rather self die.

iedoch trouwe ich wol genesen,
yet trust I well recover,

sal mîn gelucke gût wesen.‘
shall my fortune good be.‘

Dô sprach der kunich Lâtîn
Then spoke the king Latinus

‚Turnûs, daz mach wole sîn,
‚Turnus, that may well be,

diu rede, is manlîch unde gût.
the speech, is manly and good.

unde is daz ir ez tût,
and is that you it do,

wir mûzen ez enden.‘
we must it end.‘

dô wolder boten senden,
then would-he messengers send,

als sîne man gerieten,
as his men counseled,

und Ênêase enbieten,
and to-Aeneas send-word,

wie diu rede was getân, 8745
how the speech was made,

ober den kampf wolde bestân,
if-he the combat would undertake,

und waz sîn wille wâre.
and what his will were.

dô quam ein starkez mâre
then came a strong tidings

in die borch uber al
into the castle over all

und vor den kunich in den sal, 8750
and before the king into the hall,

daz die Troiâne
that the Trojans

wârn von Montalbâne
were from Montalbane

under Turnûses her geriten
among Turnus's army ridden

und mit sîn lûten dâ gestriten
and with his people there fought

und ir dâ vile lâge tôt. 8755
and of-them there many lay dead.

dô wart dâ michel nôt,
then became there great distress,

dô daz mâre dare quam
when the tidings thither came

undez Turnûs vernam,
and-it Turnus heard,

der stolze und der kûne,
the proud and the bold,

der willich was ze tûne
who willing was to do

alle manlîche tât.
every manly deed.

dô wart gescheiden der rât.
then was parted the council.

Camilla and the Ambush

XXXVIII

Turnus sets out to ambush Aeneas in the wood with a thousand knights, leaving Messapus and Camilla the army. Camilla, armed in white mail with an ivory shield, leads her maidens into battle and drives the Trojans back, until Orilocus kills the maid Lareine and tells the Trojans they face women, not mermaids, and they drive Camilla back to Laurentum. Messapus drives the Trojans back again. The Trojan Tarchon taunts Camilla that she would do better fighting for love in bed, and offers her a bezant for it.

Dô wâfende sich balde
Then armed themselves quickly

der junge und der alde.
the young and the old.

Turnûs reit dô dannen
Turnus rode then thence

mit den sînen mannen,
with the his-own men,

die dâ volgeten sîme van.
who there followed his banner.

die halsberge leitens an.
the hauberks laid-they on.

dô der helt lussam
when the hero lovely

Turnûs ûz der borch quam
Turnus out-of the castle came

vor die stat an daz velt,
before the town onto the field,

dô sach her Dranceses schelt
then saw he Drances's shield

fûren einen sînen kneht.
carry a his servant.

her sprach ‚nû waldes halb reht
he spoke ‚now govern-it on-behalf-of right

unde gelucke unde frome,
and fortune and profit,

daz dirre schilt heim kome
that this shield home come

ganz und âne wunde!
whole and without wound!

hie gewinnent ubile stunde
here win evil hour

die armen herlûte,
the poor host-people,

die erarnent ez noch hûte
they earn it still today

wol nâch sîme willen.‘
well after his will.‘

dô was frou Kamille,
then was lady Camilla,
diu mâre und diu rîche,
the famous and the rich,
gewâfent ritterlîche
armed knightly
sie und ir geselleschaft.
she and her company.
si tâten schône ritterschaft
they did fair knighthood
des tages dô si es begunden,
of-the day when they it began,
wande siz vil wole kunden.
for they-it very well could.
Kamille was vil gemeit,
Camilla was very glad,
vermezzenlîche sie reit,
boldly she rode,
si hete manlîchen mût.
she had manly spirit.
ir halsberge was vil gût,
her hauberk was very good,
wîz lûter sam ein îs,
white clear as an ice,
her ne mohte neheine wîs
it — might no way
schôner noch bezzer sîn,
more-beautiful nor better be,
unde ir hosen îsenîn.
and her hose iron.
vil schône ir helm was,
very fair her helmet was,
lûter brûn alsam ein glas,
clear brown as a glass,

gezieret wol mit steinen.
adorned well with stones.

ir schilt was helfenbeinen,
her shield was ivory,

wol besniten und wol gebogen,
well carved and well bent,

ungehûtet und unbezogen,
uncovered and uncased,

als diu frouwe wolde.
as the lady would.

diu buckel was von golde,
the boss was of gold,

dar inne stunt manech edel stein,
there in stood many-a noble stone,

dâ diu sunne dorch schein,
where the sun through shone,

als ich sagen hôrde.
as I tell heard.

der schiltrieme was ein borde
the shield-strap was a braid

genât ûf einen samît.
sewn on a samite.

und si saz ûf ein râvît
and she sat on a palfrey

bedaht mit zindâle,
covered with sendal,

dâ si zû dem mâle
where she at the time

manech sper ûffe brach
many-a spear upon broke

und manegen ritter abe stach.
and many-a knight off thrust.

Kamille diu rîche
Camilla the rich

und der frouwen iegelîche,
and of-the ladies each,

die mit ir dare wâren komen,
who with her thither were come,

die heten alle genomen
they had all taken

sîdîne rîsen,
silken veils,

nâch ir lantwîsen
after their land's-ways

umbe den helm gewunden.
about the helmet wound.

zû den selben stunden,
at the same hours,

daz der helt lussam
that the hero lovely

zû zir dar geriten quam,
to her thither ridden came,

si sprach im manlîche zû
she spoke to-him manfully to

‚ez nis nû jârlank niht ze frû,
‚it is now this-year not too early,

daz wir uns heben in den strît.
that we us raise into the fight.

des is mê denne zît,
of-that is more than time,

daz wir ritterschefte phlegen.
that we knighthood keep.

wir hân sus lange gnûch gelegen
we have thus long enough lain

und hân geschaffet unser gemach.‘
and have made our ease.‘

Turnûs wider zû zir sprach
Turnus back to her spoke

stille niht offenbâre
quietly not openly

‚frouwe, ich hân ein mâre
‚lady, I have a tidings

wârlîche vernomen,
truly heard,

mir is ein spehâre wider komen,
to-me is a spy back come,

den ich hâte gesant,
whom I had sent,

aldâ her Ênêam vant,
where he Aeneas found,

des hân ich immer sint erbiten,
of-that have I ever since waited,

her saget mir daz her sî geriten
he tells me that he be ridden

an eine stat, ich weiz wol war,
to a place, I know well where,

ich wil mit tûsent rittern dar
I will with thousand knights thither

gewâfenden rîten:
armed ride:

so mach ich im wol gestrîten,
so may I to-him well fight,

ob her mir iender wider vert.
if he to-me anywhere against goes.

is mir diu sâlde beschert,
is to-me the luck allotted,

daz ich im mach komen zû,
that I to-him may come to,

ir freischet wol waz ich es tû:
you will-learn well what I of-it do:

daz ich in ê ze tôde slâ,
that I him rather to death slay,

êr ich in immer gevâ
before I him ever catch

lebendich oder gesunt.
living or healthy.

mir is der walt wole kunt,
to-me is the wood well known,

die phade und die strâzen.
the paths and the roads.

ich wil mit û hie lâzen
I will with you here leave

Messâpum den kûnen degen,
Messapus the bold warrior,

her sal mînes heres phlegen,
he shall my host tend,

dar zû solt irs gewalden,
there to shall you-of-it govern,

ir zwei solt behalden
you two shall keep

zehen tûsent ritter ze were
ten thousand knights in defense

sunder schutzen und fûzhere.
besides archers and foot-host.

got der mûze ûch bewaren,
God he may you guard,

ich wil after wege varen
I will through ways fare

gegen Ênêase dem Troiân.‘
toward Aeneas the Trojan.‘

daz wart schiere alsô getân.
that was quickly so done.

Dô reit Turnûs der helt balt
Then rode Turnus the hero bold

gegen Ênêase in den walt,
toward Aeneas into the wood,

dâ her sich sîn verwânde.
where he himself of-him expected.

sîn man her des mande,
his men he of-that reminded,

daz si riten stille.
that they rode quietly.

dô tâtens sînen willen
then did-they his will

als dem hêren lieb was.
as to-the lord dear was.

dô lach der hêre Ênêas
then lay the lord Aeneas

vil stille an sîner lâge,
very quietly in his ambush,

dâ si sîn niene sâgen,
where they of-him not-at-all saw,

und dâ her ir ouch niene sach.
and where he of-them also not-at-all saw.

sus lâgens allen den tach
thus lay-they all the day

enbeidenthalben stille.
on-both-sides quietly.

dô hete sich Kamille
then had herself Camilla

des stormes underwunden,
of-the assault undertaken,

des in korzen stunden
of-which in short hours

vil manech man den lîb verlôs.
very many-a man the life lost.

vil wol erkande man unde erkôs
very well knew one and discerned
ir stiche unde ire slege.
her thrusts and her blows.
die Troiâr slûgens after wege
the Trojans drove-they through ways
wol eine halbe mîle.
well a half mile.
dô wart dô eine wîle
then was then a while
der storm vil harde unde grôz:
the assault very hard and great:
freislîche man dâ schôz,
terribly one there shot,
ritterlîche man dâ stach,
knightly one there thrust,
des vil manech schaft zebrach,
of-which very many-a shaft broke,
mit swerden man dâ sêre slûch,
with swords one there sorely struck,
von diu beleib ir dâ genûch
from that remained of-them there enough
wunder unde tôten.
wounded and dead.
dâ worden verscrôten
there became hacked
helme und sarringe.
helmets and armor-rings.
zû deme tagedinge
at the day's-business
hete frowe Kamille
had lady Camilla
ein wîle wol ir willen.
a while well her will.

Kamille diu rîche
Camilla the rich

reit dâ ritterlîche
rode there knightly

unde ir junkfrouwen.
and her young-ladies.

dô moht man wunder schouwen,
then might one wonder behold,

daz si des tages worhten
which they of-the day wrought

manlîche sunder vorhten.
manly without fears.

die stolzen Troiâne
the proud Trojans

si wâren des enwâne,
they were of-that in-belief,

daz ez wârn gotinne
that it were goddesses

oder merminne,
or mermaids,

die ersterben niene mohten
who die not-at-all might

und dorch daz sô vohten,
and for that so fought,

daz man sie niht mohte erslân,
that one them not might slay,

unz Ôrilocus der Troiân
until Orilocus the Trojan

gewâfent in den storm quam.
armed into the assault came.

her was ein helt lussam,
he was a hero lovely,

der frouwen slûch her eine,
of-the ladies struck he one,

diu maget hiez Lareine,
the maiden was-called Lareine,

daz si schiere tôt lach.
that she quickly dead lay.

dô der helt daz gesach,
when the hero that saw,

daz si wâren sô getân,
that they were so made,

daz man si mohte erslân
that one them might slay

und gewunden unde vellen,
and wound and fell,

her sprach ze sînen gesellen
he spoke to his companions

‚wert ûch, helide gûte,
‚defend yourselves, heroes good,

mit manlîchem mûte!
with manly spirit!

diz volk, daz ir hie gesiet,
this folk, that you here see,

ez ne sint merminne niet,
it — are mermaids not,

ez is ein rehtez wîbhere.
it is a right woman-host.

swer sich ir niene were,
whoever himself from-them not-at-all defends,

hern gewinnet nimmer êre.‘
he wins never honor.‘

dô schameten sich sêre
then shamed themselves sorely

die geflohen heten dâ bevorn.
who fled had there before.

diu ros nâmens mit den sporn
the horses took-they with the spurs

und liezen dare strîchen. 8935
and let thither sweep.

dô mûste vore wîchen
then must before give-way

diu frowe Kamille
the lady Camilla

uber ir willen
against her will

ze Laurente hin wider.
to Laurentum thither back.

dô gelach ir vil dar nider 8940
then lay of-them many there down

gestochen unde erslagen.
stabbed and slain.

alsô liezen sie sich jagen
so let they themselves chase

vaste unz in daz wîchûs.
fast until into the tower.

dô sprancte Messâpûs
then spurred Messapus

mit zwein tûsent heliden gûten, 8945
with two thousand heroes good,

die der borch hûten,
who the castle guarded,

die Troiâre her dan treib.
the Trojans he thence drove.

manech man dâ tôt beleib,
many-a man there dead remained,

wande sie sich werden
for they themselves defended

mit geschutze und mit swerden. 8950
with shooting and with swords.

Dô Messâpûs mit dem van
When Messapus with the banner
die Troiâre rande an
the Trojans rode at
und Kamille diu maget,
and Camilla the maiden,
dô worden sie gejaget,
then became they chased,
wole vier acker lank.
well four acres long.
dâ wart michel gedrank
there became great press
an dem wîten gevilde.
on the wide field.
da zehiewen sie die schilde
there hewed-apart they the shields
und die helme gûte,
and the helmets good,
dâ wart von dem blûte
there became from the blood
daz grûne gras alrôt.
the green grass all-red.
die helide dâ lâgen tôt,
the heroes there lay dead,
die wâren unzalaht.
they were countless.
starke dâ Kamille vaht,
strongly there Camilla fought,
want siz wol getorste tûn.
for she-it well dared do.

dô was der ritter Tarcûn
then was the knight Tarchon

ein harde hobesch Troiân
a very courtly Trojan

unde ein ritter wol getân,
and a knight well made,

hobesch und gûtes willen:
courtly and of-good will:

her sprach ze frowen Kamillen
he spoke to lady Camilla

ein teil schamelîche
a part shamefully

Tarcûn der rîche
Tarchon the rich

‚waz meinet daz‘ frouwe maget‘
‚what means that‘ lady maiden‘

daz ir uns ritter sus jaget‘
that you us knights thus chase‘

unde stechet unde slât?
and stab and strike?

waz wunders is daz ir gegât?
what of-wonder is that you go?

wie wânet ir wie û daz zeme?
how suppose you how to-you that befit?

ich wâne ez ubil ende neme‘
I ween it evil end take‘

daz ir sus gerne strîtet
that you thus gladly fight

und statelîchen rîtet.
and stately ride.

ich sage û wârlîche daz‘
I tell you truly that‘

ein ander storm zâme û baz‘
an other assault would-befit you better‘

wâre daz irs phlâget:
were that you-of-it kept:

daz ir sanfte lâget
that you softly lay

an einem scônen bette,
on a beautiful bed,

und wârez dâ ze wette
and were-it there in wager

daz vehten umb die minne,
the fighting for the love,

dâ moht ir wol gewinnen,
there might you well win,

des phlâge ich gerne mit û
that would-keep I gladly with you

zeim andern mâle denne nû,
at-an other time than now,

hin ze der nâhisten naht,
thither toward the next night,

daz ir versuchtet mîne maht.
that you tried my might.

dar umbe setze ich û mîn phant,
there about set I to-you my pledge,

einen trôischen bisant,
a Trojan bezant,

der zwelfe geltent eine mark,
of-which twelve are-worth a mark,

ich weiz doch wol ir sît sô stark,
I know yet well you are so strong,

ir gewunnet schiere,
you would-win quickly,

ob mîn wâren viere.
if of-me were four.

daz wolde ich varen lâzen.
that would I fare let.

ez rouwet mich ze mâzen
it rues me in measure

alse vil sô ich dâ sprach:
as much as I there spoke:

ir hetet es fromen unde gemach
you would-have of-it profit and ease

und ich schaden und arbeit,
and I harm and hardship,

des weste ich wol die wârheit.‘
of-that knew I well the truth.‘

Camilla’s Death

XXXIX

Camilla runs Tarchon through, and when his cousin Flemin and another Trojan ride at the women, Tarpeia and Camilla kill them; Camilla tells the dead Tarchon he has paid for his bargain with his life. Arras, who has trailed her all day afraid to attack, sees her unhorse the priest Choreus and dismount to cut the cords of his jeweled helmet, and spears her; Tarpeia kills him. She is carried to Laurentum. Turnus leaves his ambush for the town, and Aeneas, hearing of her death, camps before the castle to besiege it.

Tarcûn sweich dô stille.
Tarchon was-silent then still.

dô rûrde frowe Kamille
then spurred lady Camilla

daz ros vaste mit den sporn,
the horse firmly with the spurs,

sie rach selbe ir zorn
she avenged self her wrath

den ir Tarcûn sprach:
which to-her Tarchon spoke:

dorch den lîb si in stach,
through the body she him thrust,

daz her schiere tôt lach.
that he quickly dead lay.

ein sîn neve daz gesach,
a his cousin that saw,

der was geheizen Flêmîn,
he was called Flemin,

und ein ander frunt sîn,
and an other friend his,

Troiâre beide.
Trojans both.

in wart dâ vil leide,
to-them became there much sorrow,

die frowen sie ane randen,
the ladies they at rode,

si fûrden in den handen
they carried in the hands

diu swert beide ensament bar.
the swords both together bare.

des wart der magede einiu gwar,
of-that became of-the maidens one aware,

diu hiez Tarpîde,
who was-called Tarpeia,

diu het in dem strîde
who had in the fight

ritterschefte vil getân.
knighthood much done.

si stach den einen Troiân,
she thrust the one Trojan,

daz her niht mêr wort gesprach.
that he no more word spoke.

Kamille den andern stach,
Camilla the other thrust,

daz her tôt viel ûf daz gras.
that he dead fell onto the grass.

si sprach als ir ze mûte was
she spoke as to-her in mind was

ze deme ritter Tarcône,
to the knight Tarchon,

si grûzte in vile unschône; 9030
she greeted him very unbeautifully;

sie sprach ‚nû lige hie!
she spoke ‚now lie here!

wie getorstest dû mir ie
how daredst thou to-me ever

bôse rede gebieten?
evil speech offer?

dune darft mich niht mieten,
thou needest me not hire,

sus sal man klaffâren weren,
thus shall one babblers ward-off,

ich mach hûte wol enberen
I can today well forgo

dîner phenninge.
thy pennies.

nû hâstû dîn gedinge 9040
now hast-thou thy bargain

vergolden mit dem lebene.
repaid with the life.

nune hâstû niht ze gebene
now hast-thou nothing to give

weder rede noch den schat:
neither speech nor the treasure:

dû bist gevaren in gotes hat.‘
thou art fared into God's hatred.‘

Dô daz alsô komen was,
When that so come was,

do was einer der hiez Arras
then was one who was-called Arras

mit den Troiâren dâ.
with the Trojans there.

Kamillen reit her allez nâ
Camilla rode he all after

verre allen den tach.
far all the day.

der markte unde sach,
he marked and saw,

wie si slûch und wie si stach
how she struck and how she thrust

und wie sie ir spere brach
and how she her spear broke

und wie sie justierde
and how she jousted

und wie sie pungierde
and how she charged

und wie ritterlîch si slûch:
and how knightly she struck:

want des tete sie genûch
for of-that did she enough

unglîch einem wîbe.
unlike a woman.

hern hete an sîme lîbe
he had in his body

manheit noch ne was sô frome,
manhood nor — was so valiant,

daz her engegen ir torste komen,
that he toward her dared come,

hern hetes deheinen willen.
he had-of-it no will.

don nam frowe Kamille
then took lady Camilla

neheiner slahte ware des.
no kind heed of-it.

dô reit der hêre Chôres,
then rode the lord Choreus,

der Troiâre prêster
of-the Trojans priest

unde ir êwe mêster,
and their law's master,

und was doch ritter vile gût
and was yet knight very good

und hete manlîchen mût
and had manly spirit

und kunde wole an ritterschaft.
and could well in knighthood.

grôz was sîn geselleschaft
great was his company

ritter unde schutzen.
knights and archers.

her kunde wole nutzen
he could well use

beidiu bûch unde swert.
both book and sword.

daz ros was maneges phundes wert,
the horse was many-a pound's worth,

dâ der helt ûffe saz.
where the hero upon sat.

her was gewâfenet baz
he was armed better

danne ieman dâ wâre
than anyone there were

under den Troiâren
among the Trojans

oder in ander sîte
or on other side

in allem deme strîte.
in all the fight.

zû den selben stunden
at the same hours

heter ûf gebunden
had-he up bound

einen helm scône und sô lieht,
a helmet fair and so bright,

daz ne sagete man uns nieht,
that — told one us not,

daz her bezzer mohte sîn.
that it better might be.

zoberst stunt ein rubîn,
uppermost stood a ruby,

unde alumbe an der lîste
and all-around on the rim

smaragde unde amatîste
emeralds and amethysts

und vorne an dem nasebant
and in-front on the nose-band

ein gelwer adamant,
a yellow adamant,

genûch grôz unde gût,
enough great and good,

dorchlûhtec rôt sam ein blût.
translucent red as a blood.

waz mach ich û mê sagen?
what may I to-you more tell?

her lûhte engegen deme tage.
it shone toward the day.

diu kuniginne Kamille
the queen Camilla

dô was ie gût ir wille,
then was ever good her will,

daz sie den helm erworbe
that she the helmet won

oder in der ger erstorbe,
or in the desire died,

des geluste si vil harde.
of-that lusted she very hard.

si bestunt den êwarden,
she attacked the priest,

von dem rosse sie in stach,
from the horse she him thrust,

sô daz im der hals brach
so that to-him the neck broke

und vil schiere tôt was.
and very quickly dead was.

uber in erbeiztes ûf daz gras,
over him dismounted-she onto the grass,

wan sie des helmes gerde.
for she of-the helmet desired.

si wolde mit dem swerde
she would with the sword

die snûre enzwei snîden.
the cords in-two cut.

si wâren gût sîden
they were good silk

und veste wol ze mâzen.
and firm well in measure.

si hetez baz verlâzen,
she had-it better left,

wande ir tôt dar ane lach.
for her death there on lay.

vil rehte daz gesach
very rightly that saw

der Troiâre Arras,
the Trojan Arras,

der dâ bî ir was,
who there by her was,

idoch vorht her si sêre.
yet feared he her sorely.

mit eime scharphen gêre
with a sharp spear

die frouwen her ze tôde schôz.
the lady he to death shot.

des her ubile genôz,
of-which he ill profited,

daz her ir den lîb nam:
that he from-her the life took:

mit zorne engegen ime quam
with wrath toward him came

zû der selben zîde
at the same time

diu maget Tarpîde,
the maiden Tarpeia,

Arrasen sie ze tôde slûch,
Arras she to death struck,

dâ mite engalt ouch hers genûc.
there with paid also he-of-it enough.

Do Kamille diu werde
When Camilla the worthy

tôt lach ûf der erde
dead lay on the earth

unde ir magede quâmen dar
and her maidens came thither

und sie des worden gewar
and they of-it became aware

si heten grôzę rouwe.
they had great rue.

mit vil gûter trouwe
with very good faith

klageten sie ir frouwen.
lamented they their lady.

dâ moht man jâmer schouwen.
there might one misery behold.

sêre, sie weinden,
sorely, they wept,

wol si daz bescheinden,
well they that showed,

daz in diu frouwe lieb was.
that to-them the lady dear was.

si erbeizten nider an daz gras,
they dismounted down onto the grass,

si legeten sie ûf einen schelt
they laid her on a shield

unde rûmden daz velt,
and cleared the field,

sos allerschierste mohten.
as-they very-soonest might.

dô hete sie gevohten
then had she fought

ir selben schedelîche
to-her self harmfully

diu kuniginne rîche,
the queen rich,

dô si den lîb hete verloren.
when she the life had lost.

al daz si hete dâ bevoren
all that she had there before

erworben lob und êre,
won praise and honor,

daz hete sie dô sêre
that had she then sorely

mit dem lîbe vergolden.
with the life repaid.

dô trûgen sie ir holden
then carried her her liegemen

ze Laurente in des kuneges sal.
to Laurentum into the king's hall.

dô wart schiere uber al
then became quickly over all

in der borch mâre,
in the castle tidings,

daz dâ tôt wâre
that there dead were

Kamille diu hêre maget:
Camilla the lordly maiden:

dô wart si sêre geklaget.
then was she sorely lamented.

Dô diu frouwe lach tôt,
When the lady lay dead,

vil schiere manz Turnô enbôt
very quickly one-it to-Turnus sent-word

an sîner lâge dâ her lach.
in his ambush where he lay.

dâ heter allen den tach
there had-he all the day

unz an den âbent gelegen.
until to the evening lain.

harde rouwich wart der degen,
very rueful became the warrior,

dô her daz mâre vernam.
when he the tidings heard.

ze Laurente her geriten quam,
to Laurentum he ridden came,

dâ vil grôz jâmer was.
where very great misery was.

do gesach in Ênêas
then saw him Aeneas

dannen wole rîten.
thence well ride.

hern mohte im niht gestrîten,
he might with-him not fight,

von diu getorste in niht bestân
from that dared him not attack

Ênêas der Troiân.
Aeneas the Trojan.

daz rou in vile sêre.
that rued him very sorely.

zwei hundert und niht mêre
two hundred and not more

heter dâ sîner manne.
had-he there of-his men.

Turnûs der reit danne
Turnus he rode thence

mit tûsent heliden snellen
with thousand heroes swift

sîner hergesellen
of-his army-fellows

und reit ûz dem walde.
and rode out-of the wood.

dar nâch reit ouch balde
there after rode also quickly

Ênêas der wîgant,
Aeneas the warrior,

dâ her sîne lûte vant.
where he his people found.

Dô der hêre Ênêas
When the lord Aeneas

ûz dem walde komen was,
out-of the wood come was,

und ze sînen lûten quam
and to his people came

und daz mâre vernam,
and the tidings heard,

daz Kamille was erslagen
that Camilla was slain

und in die borch was getragen
and into the castle was carried

ze Laurente in daz betehûs:
at Laurentum into the prayer-house:

dô wister wol daz Turnûs
then knew-he well that Turnus

harde dermite geswachet was,
very-much there-with weakened was,

des frowete sich Ênêas.
of-that rejoiced himself Aeneas.

ez was doch harde spâte.
it was yet very late.

dô wart her des ze râte
then became he of-that to counsel

mit den sînen holden,
with the his-own liegemen,

die im helfen wolden
who him help would

die borch besitzen an den graben
the castle besiege at the ditch

unde nimmer komen drabe,
and never come there-off,

ê her sie gewunne.
ere he it won.

want dô was worden dunne
for then was become thin

Turnûses helfe und sîn here,
Turnus's help and his host,

die sich sazten ze were,
who themselves set to defense,

wan Kamille erslagen was.
for Camilla slain was.

dô hiez der hêre Ênêas
then bade the lord Aeneas

alle sîne holden,
all his liegemen,

die im helfen solden,
who him help should,

herbergen an daz velt
encamp on the field

unde selbe sîn gezelt
and self his tent

vor der borch ûf slân.
before the castle up pitch.

daz wart schiere getân.
that was quickly done.

Dido's Tent, and Camilla's Bier

XL

The Trojans pitch the great tent Dido gave Aeneas, and the townsmen take it for a castle built in one night. Latinus asks a truce of six weeks, and one of forty days and forty nights is agreed. Turnus laments Camilla and sends her home on a rich bier with two hundred knights, walking beside it with a candle. At home she is buried in a tomb she had planned in her life, built by the wise Geometras: a marble court on arches and a pillar, with a vault of jeweled windows, which the poet describes at length.

Liehte schein der mâne.
Brightly shone the moon.

die stolzen Troiâne
the proud Trojans

herbergeten bî der naht.
encamped by the night.

dô hete man Ênêê braht
then had one to-Aeneas brought

ein gezelt wît unde hô.
a tent wide and high.

daz hete im frouwe Dîdô
that had to-him lady Dido

gegeben dorch minne.
given for love.

ez was geworht mit sinne,
it was wrought with sense,

als ich û wol sagen mach.
as I to-you well tell may.

ez stunt dâ man ez verre sach,
it stood where one it far saw,

als ez ein turn wâre.
as-if it a tower were.

zweinzich soumâre
twenty pack-horses

ne mohtenz dar niht getragen.
— might-it thither not carry.

ez wart ûf einen berch geslagen
it was upon a hill pitched

an eine vile schône stat,
at a very fair place,

al dâ Ênêas bat,
all where Aeneas asked,

ûf einen vile hôhen mast.
on a very high mast.

die snûre wâren vile vast,
the cords were very firm,

als sie von rehte solden sîn.
as they by right should be.

der knoph der was guldîn,
the knob it was golden,

dar ûffe saz ein guldîn are.
there upon sat a golden eagle.

daz gezelt was zweier vare,
the tent was of-two colors,

zweier hande samît.
of-two kinds samite.

einen hof vile wît
a court very wide

slûch man umbe daz gezelt
pitched one around the tent

und bevienk ein michel velt.
and enclosed a great field.

daz wart dorch hêrschaft getân,
that was for lordship done,

dorch rîchtûm und dorch wolstân.
for riches and for splendor.

ez stunt als ein mûre.
it stood as a wall.

des nam in lutzel tûre,
of-that took them little wonder,

ezne was niht dorch were.
it was not for defense.

dar umbe herbergete daz here,
there around encamped the host,

manech kûne Troiân,
many-a bold Trojan,

und manech gezelt wol getân
and many-a tent well made

wart dâ des nahtes ûf geslagen.
was there of-the night up pitched.

des morgens doz begunde tagen
in-the morning when-it began to-dawn

unde schein uber al
and shone over all

uber berch und uber tal
over hill and over dale

unde ez die gesâgen,
and it those saw,

die in der borch lâgen,
who in the castle lay,

ûf mûren und ûf zinnen
on walls and on battlements

ze Laurente enbinnen,
at Laurentum within,

michel wunder sie des nam.
great wonder them of-it took.

daz mâre in die borch quam.
the tidings into the castle came.

sie liefen ûf die mûre,
they ran onto the wall,

ritâre und gebûre,
knights and peasants,

knehte unde koufman.
servants and merchants.

daz mâre wassen began.
the tidings to-grow began.

si sprachen al gelîche
they spoke all alike

arme unde rîche,
poor and rich,

daz Ênêas der mâre
that Aeneas the famous

ein freislîch man wâre
a terrible man were

sînen vîanden.
to-his enemies.

die daz wol erkanden
who that well knew

und daz gezelt gesâgen stân,
and the tent saw stand,

daz als ein mûre was getân,
which as a wall was made,

alsô schînbâre,
so shining,

si wânden daz es wâre
they supposed that it were

ein borch, daz ne was ez niet.
a castle, that — was it not.

vil starke ervorhte ez diu diet.
very strongly feared it the folk.

si sprâchen nâch wâne,
they spoke after supposing,

daz die Troiâne
that the Trojans

worben mit der gotes kraht,
wrought with the gods' might,

wande sie an einer naht
for they in one night

ein solhe borch heten geworht.
a such castle had wrought.

des wart ir angest unde ir vorht
of-that became their fear and their dread

gemêret, daz tet in diu nôt.
increased, that did to-them the need.

der kunich Lâtîn enbôt
the king Latinus sent-word

Ênêê sîne holde
to-Aeneas his favor

und anders daz her wolde
and other what he would

an sînes liebes frundes stat.
in his dear friend's stead.

minnechlîchen her in bat
lovingly he him asked

eins frides sehs wochen.
of-a peace six weeks.

dô wart der fride gesprochen
then was the peace spoken

vierzich tage und vierzich naht.
forty days and forty nights.

des was vile wol bedaht
of-that was very well minded

Ênêas der Troiân,
Aeneas the Trojan,

dô daz alsô was getân.
when that so was done.

Dô der fride gegeben wart,
When the peace given was,

dô schûf Turnûs die vart,
then arranged Turnus the journey,

Kamillen her sande
Camilla he sent

tôte heim ze lande.
dead home to land.

des wart her vil unfrô,
of-that became he very unglad,

iedoch mûstez sîn alsô,
yet must-it be so,

swie leit ez im wâre.
however grievous it to-him were.

dô hiez her eine bâre
then bade he a bier

bereiten hêrlîchen
prepare lordly

Kamillen der rîchen,
for-Camilla the rich,

als uns daz bûch kunt tût.
as us the book known makes.

die boume wâren vile gût
the poles were very good

von helfenbeine,
of ivory,

gnûch lank und niht kleine,
enough long and not small,

des enbrast nehein teil.
of-it lacked no part.

sîdîn wâren diu seil,
silken were the ropes,

diu besten diu man ie gesach.
the best which one ever saw.

ein kolter dar ûffe lach
a quilt there upon lay

von rôtem samîte.
of red samite.

mit grûnem cimîte
with green samite

was diu lîste undersniten.
was the border lined.

daz her ungerne hete vermiten,
that he unwillingly had forgone,

daz wizzet unde geloubet.
that know and believe.

man legete ir under ir houbet
one laid to-her under her head

ein phlûmvederîn kussîn.
a feather-down cushion.

diu zieche was ôsterîn,
the cover was eastern,

diu ander driancasîne.
the other of-driancasine.

ein phelle sarrazîne
a silk-cloth Saracen

grôzen unde langen
great and long

hiez der hêre hangen
bade the lord hang

uber die junkfrouwen.
over the young-lady.

her was in grôzen rouwen
he was in great rue

von ir in sînem mûte.
for her in his mind.

zwêne mûle gûte
two mules good

tet man zû der bâren.
put one to the bier.

do si al gereit wâren
when they all ready were

ir magde und sîne holden,
her maidens and his liegemen,

die si fûren solden,
who her carry should,

dô klagete sie vil sêre
then lamented her very sorely

Turnûs der hêre.
Turnus the lord.

Dô sprach der hêre Turnûs
Then spoke the lord Turnus

‚daz wir uns scheiden mûzen sus,
‚that we us part must thus,

daz is ân mînen willen.
that is without my will.

ôwê (sprach her), Kamille,
alas (spoke he), Camilla,

schônez bilde, reiniu maget,
beautiful image, pure maiden,

dun wirdest nimmer verklaget
thou becomest never fully-lamented

die wîle daz diu werlt stêt.
the while that the world stands.

wie unsanft ez mich ane gêt,
how ungently it me on goes,

daz dû dînen lîb hâst verloren!
that thou thy life hast lost!

wâ wart von wîbe ie geboren
where was of woman ever born

in allem ertrîche
in all earth-realm

dehein dîn gelîche
none thy like

unde enwirt ouch nimmer mêre!
and not-becomes also never more!

diu werlt hete dîn êre,
the world had thy honor,

niwan daz des wesen niene mach,
except that that be not-at-all may,

daz dû unz an den sûntach
that thou until to the doomsday

lebetes dar inne,
livedst there in,

aller tugende und sinne
of-all virtues and senses

der hetest dû genûch.
of-them hadst thou enough.

unsâlich sî her der dich slûch,
unblessed be he who thee slew,

der tet der werlde grôzen schaden.
he did to-the world great harm.

wie mohten ez die gote gestaden,
how might it the gods allow,

daz dû verlore dîn leben,
that thou lost thy life,

dô sie dir heten gegeben
when they to-thee had given

einen lîb sô wol getân?
a body so well made?

war umbe liezen sie dich slân?
where fore let they thee slay?

si solden dîn baz hân gehût
they should thee better have guarded

dorch dîne manege tugent gût
for thy many virtue good

und dorch dîn lobelîchen sin.
and for thy praiseworthy sense.

wie sêre rouwich ich des bin,
how sorely rueful I of-it am,

daz ich dîn noch enberen mûz!‘
that I thee still forgo must!‘

mit der bâre gienk her ze fûz
with the bier went he on foot

eine gûte wîle,
a good while,

wol eine halbe mîle,
well a half mile,

Turnûs der wîgant.
Turnus the warrior.

ein kerzen trûch her an der hant,
a candle carried he in the hand,

ein wol brinnendez lieht,
a well burning light,

des ne wolder enberen nieht.
of-that — would-he forgo not.

sam tâten alle gelîche
likewise did all alike

arme unde rîche,
poor and rich,

die dâ mit im wâren,
who there with him were,

si giengen mit der bâren
they went with the bier

und trûgen an den handen
and carried in the hands

kerzen, die lieht branden.
candles, which brightly burned.

die frouwen êrden sie dâ mite,
the lady honored they there with,

daz was sîn wille und der site.
that was his will and the custom.

Dô fûren die junkfrouwen
Then fared the young-ladies

mit michelen rouwen
with great rue

mit der frouwen dannen.
with the lady thence.

Turnûs gebôt sînen mannen,
Turnus commanded to-his men,

zwein hundert rittern gûten,
to-two hundred knights good,

des was im ze mûte,
of-that was to-him in mind,

daz her si mit ir sande.
that he them with her sent.

dô quâmen sie ze lande,
then came they to land,

ichn weiz uber wie manegen tach,
I-not know over how many day,

des ich gesagen niene mach.
of-which I tell not-at-all may.

dô man daz mâre vernam,
when one the tidings heard,

daz si tôt wider quam,
that she dead back came,

Kamille diu rîche,
Camilla the rich,

mit rouwen grôzlîche
with rue greatly

sie dâ wart enphangen,
she there was received,

daz ir sô was ergangen.
that to-her so was gone.

Welt ir nû rehte verstân
Will you now rightly understand

eine rede alsô getân,
a tale so made,

die ir ê selden habet gehôrt,
which you ere seldom have heard,

sô merket rehte mîniu wort
so mark rightly my words

bescheidenlîche sunder;
discerningly apart;

sô moget ir hôren wunder,
so may you hear wonder,

daz mir niht vil enschadet,
that to-me not much harms,

wie diu frouwe wart bestadet,
how the lady was buried,

Kamille diu werde,
Camilla the worthy,

vil hôhe enboven der erde
very high above the earth

bî ir templô an ein stat,
by her temple at a place,

dâ sie sich selbe legen bat
where she herself self lay asked

ir lûte die daz tâten.
her people who that did.

des hete si sich berâten
of-that had she herself counseled

selbe bî ir lebene.
self in her life.

vil hêrlîch und vil ebene
very lordly and very evenly

ein geworke sô lussam,
a work so lovely,

daz nieman solhes niht vernam,
that no-one such not heard,

sô hêrlîch sô daz was,
so lordly as that was,

daz meisterde Gêometras.
that mastered Geometras.

des lônde im Kamille.
for-that rewarded to-him Camilla.

dar zû was gût sîn wille,
there to was good his will,

sint daz hers begonde,
since that he-it began,

wander wole konde
for-he well could

die list von gêometrîen.
the craft of geometry.

des hôrde ich in zîen,
of-that heard I him accuse,

daz wart dâ an werke schîn,
that was there in work shown,

esn mohte anders niht sîn.
it might otherwise not be.

Vernemet wie der wîse man
Hear how the wise man

des werkes zallerêrst began,
of-the work first-of-all began,

wandez in lutzel tûrde.
for-it them little cost.

mit marmor her umb mûrde
with marble he around walled

eine sinwelle stat,
a round place,

als man in hiez unde bat.
as one him bade and asked.

ez was vile zierlîch.
it was very elegant.

jaspîn was der esterîch
jasper was the pavement

zweinzich fûz wît innen.
twenty feet wide inside.

dâ lach in vier sinnen
there lay in four ways

vier steine wol gehouwen,
four stones well hewn,

die man gerne mohte schouwen,
which one gladly might behold,

daz saget man uns vor ungelogen.
that tells one us for unlied.

dar ûffe stunden zwên swibogen:
there upon stood two arches:

der wîse man Gêometras,
the wise man Geometras,

der des werkes meister was,
who of-the work master was,

her worhte sie mit mûze.
he wrought them with leisure.

si wârn hôch zweinzich vûze.
they were high twenty feet.

des konde her wol râmen,
of-that could he well aim,

daz sie ze samene quâmen
that they to gathering came

in crûzewîs obene.
in cross-way above.

daz was wol ze lobene,
that was well to praise,

als uns daz bûch urkunde gît.
as us the book witness gives.

dâ wart ein fûchstein in gelît,
there was a keystone in laid,

ich wâne ez porfir wâre.
I ween it porphyry were.

dar ûf stunt ein phîlâre
there upon stood a pillar

von marmor vierzich vûze hô
of marble forty feet high

und was gemeistert alsô,
and was mastered so,

daz michel list dar ane schein.
that great craft there on shone.

dar ûffe lach ein simezstein,
there upon lay a cornice-stone,

sinewel, siben fûze breit.
round, seven feet broad.

daz was ein michel arbeit,
that was a great labor,

des man lutzel bedorhte.
of-which one little needed.

dar ûf man dô worhte
there upon one then wrought

mit simeze und bereite
with cornice and ready

ein geworke, daz sich breite
a work, which itself spread

al umbe in allen sîten
all around on all sides

enlenge unde enwîten
in-length and in-width

ze iegelîchem steine
to each stone

gûter spannen eine.
of-good span one.

der meister mâẓetez alsô.
the master measured-it so.

ez wart vierzich fûẓe hô
it became forty feet high

und zweinzich wît enbinnen.
and twenty wide inside.

ez wart geworht mit sinnen
it was wrought with senses

unde was vil zierlîch.
and was very elegant.

dâ unden was der esterîch
there below was the pavement

al von edelen steinen
all of noble stones

grôẓen unde kleinen.
great and small.

desn darf nieman frâgen,
of-that needs no-one ask,

ob ez lobeten diez gesâgen:
if it praised who-it saw:

der meister lobetez selbe.
the master praised-it self.

dar ûf stunt ein gewelbe,
there upon stood a vault,

gemachet vile wunnesam,
made very blissful,

als ez Kamillen wol gezam
as it to-Camilla well befitted

der edelen kuneginne.
the noble queen.

ez hete in vier sinne
it had in four ways

gûter venster viere
good windows four

von granâte und von saphiere,
of garnet and of sapphire,

von smaragden und rubînen,
of emeralds and rubies,

von crisolîten und von sardînen
of chrysolites and of sards

topazien und berillen.
topazes and beryls.

der hete frouwe Kamille
of-them had lady Camilla

selbe gnûch gewunnen,
self enough won,

ê des werkes worde begunnen.
ere of-the work should-become begun.

Camilla's Tomb, and the Combat Agreed

XLI

The tomb is completed with a coffin of chalcedony, her epitaph, an undying lamp hung on a golden chain from a dove's beak, and a carved bowman who would shoot the dove and put out the light whenever one wished. As the truce ends, Turnus accuses Latinus of betraying him, and insists on the combat. Latinus urges him to win land and a wife some other way rather than lose his life, but Turnus refuses, and both champions swear to fight in fourteen nights.

Daz was al wol ze lobene.
That was all well to praise.

daz himelze was obene
the canopy was above

gemûset wol mit golde,
inlaid well with gold,

als der meister wolde. 9480
as the master would.

daz was wert maneger mark.
that was worth many-a mark.

hêrlîch was der sark,
lordly was the coffin,

ein tûre calcidônje.
a precious chalcedony.

dar ûffe ein sardônje,
there upon a sardonyx,

den moht man niht gefûgen baz. 9485
it might one not join better.

dô sazte man dar in zwei vaz
then set one there into two vessels

volle balsamen beide ensamen;
full of-balsam both together;

diu ne liezen den lîkhamen
which — let the body

niht fûlen noch stinken.
not rot nor stink.

daz konde wol bedenken
that could well bethink

der listige werkman,
the cunning workman,

der grôz lob dar abe gewan.
who great praise there off won.

ûf den sark und der neben
on the coffin and there beside

worden ir vers gescreben
became her verses written

mit gesmelze sardône
with enamel of-sard

an deme steine schône
on the stone fair

mit vil gûter scrihte.
with very good script.

nû hôret daz getihte,
now hear the poem,

ob irs habet willen:
if you-of-it have will:

hie liget frowe Kamille
here lies lady Camilla

diu mâre und diu rîche,
the famous and the rich,

diu sich sô manlîche
who herself so manfully

ritterschefte underwant,
of-knighthood undertook,

daz nie man ne vant
that never man — found

ir gelîchen noch ne sach.
her like nor — saw.

deheines werkes sie ne phlach,
no work she — kept,

wande si ûbete ritterschaft
for she practiced knighthood

und hete grôze heres kraft
and had great host's strength

und wart vor Laurente erslagen.
and was before Laurentum slain.

ir frunt mûzen sie wol klagen.
her friends must her well lament.

Dô sie daz heten getân
When they that had done

und her ûz solden gân,
and hither out should go,

ê danne sie ûz giengen,
ere than they out went,

ein lampadem sie dâ hiengen,
a lamp they there hung,

daz solt ir wizzen âne wân:
that shall you know without doubt:

dâ was balsamum în getân
there was balsam in done

sô tûre und sô hêre,
so precious and so lordly,

daz her wol immer mêre
that it well ever more

bran unde gab lieht
burned and gave light

unde enminrete iedoch nieht.
and diminished yet not.

solîch was der wieche.
such was the wick.

ez meisterde ein Crieche
it mastered a Greek

und der wîse Gêometras,
and the wise Geometras,

der ein listich man was;
who a cunning man was;

her schûf ez alser wolde.
he made it as-he would.

diu ketene was von golde,
the chain was of gold,

dâ diu lampade bî hienk.
where the lamp by hung.

nû hôret wie herz ane vienk
now hear how he-it on began

der meister, der des alles wielt.
the master, who of-it all ruled.

ein tûbe die ketene hielt,
a dove the chain held,

diu gienk dorch ir munt
which went through her mouth

(daz is genûgen wole kunt),
(that is to-many well known),

daz si hielt daz liehtvaz.
that she held the light-vessel.

ûf eime steine sie saz,
on a stone she sat,

gefûchlîch dar gehouwen.
fittingly there hewn.

si lûhte der frouwen,
she gave-light to-the lady,

daz was ein listechlîch rât.
that was a cunning device.

ein edel jachant granât
a noble jacinth garnet

was diu lampade vile gût,
was the lamp very good,

dorchlûhtec rôt als ein blût,
translucent red as a blood,

als ich û wol gesagen kan.
as I to-you well tell can.

dâ stunt ein bilde als ein man
there stood an image as a man

gesniten an einer want.
carved on a wall.

einen bogen heter an der hant,
a bow had-he in the hand,

gespannen algereite.
drawn all-ready.

daz was mit listecheite.
that was with cunning.

der bolz was gesetzet an,
the bolt was set on,

her ne weich niender dan,
he — gave-way nowhere thence,

ez̨n was ze nider noch ze hô
it was too low nor too high

und was gemachet alsô,
and was made so,

swenne sô man wolde
whenever so one would

daz̨ her schiez̨en solde
that he shoot should

die tûben diu ob ime saz̨,
the dove which over him sat,

sô viel daz liehtvaz
so fell the light-vessel
unde erleschete daz lieht.
and quenched the light.
anders ne mohtez nieht
otherwise — might-it not
geleschen noch gevallen.
be-quenched nor fall.
daz kunden wir û allen.
that announce we to-you all.
dô gienk daz volk allez her vure
then went the folk all hither forth
und vermûrde man die ture
and walled-up one the door
mit kopher und mit steinen.
with copper and with stones.
der besten spiegel einen,
of-the best mirrors one,
danen abe ich ie gehôrde,
of-which off I ever heard,
der stunt an einem orde
it stood at a place
oben an dem gewerke
above on the work
mit solhem gemerke,
with such mark,
swenne lieht was der tach,
whenever bright was the day,
daz man den spiegel gesach,
that one the mirror saw,
alsô man iht war nam,
so-that one anything heed took,

swer dô dar zû quam
whoever then there to came

inwendich einer mîle nâ.
within one mile near.

alsô was bestadet dâ
so was buried there

Kamille diu rîche
Camilla the rich

alsô hêrlîche.
so lordly.

Dô daz allez was getân,
When that all was done,

dô solde der fride ûz gân
then should the peace out go

in korzen zîten dar nâ,
in short times there after,

den sie gesworen heten dâ
which they sworn had there

Turnûs unde Ênêas.
Turnus and Aeneas.

der kunich Lâtîn der was
the king Latinus he was

ze Laurente in sîme hûs,
at Laurentum in his house,

und der hêre Turnûs
and the lord Turnus

was vor den kunich komen
was before the king come

und hete wol vernomen,
and had well heard,

daz der kunich Lâtîn
that the king Latinus

Ênêas frunt wolde sîn
Aeneas's friend would be

und er worbe umbe sûne.
and he strove for reconciliation.

Turnûs sprach der kûne
Turnus spoke the bold

zû dem kunege rîchen
to the king rich

‚ir welt mich beswîchen
‚you will me betray

der trouwen und der minnen.
of-the faith and of-the love.

des bringet ir mich innen,
of-that bring you me aware,

daz ir mir zer nôt abe stât.
that you from-me in-the need off stand.

des mach doch werden gût rât
of-that may yet become good counsel

(sprach der helt vermezzen):
(spoke the hero bold):

ichn hân noch niht vergezzen
I have still not forgotten

des kamphes des dâ geredet was.
of-the combat which there spoken was.

ich und der hêre Ênêas
I and the lord Aeneas

wir mûzen uns versûchen.
we must us try.

wil es got gerûchen,
(if)-will it God deign,

daz ich behalde mînen lîb,
that I keep my life,

her lâzet mir lant unde wîb.
he leaves to-me land and woman.

is daz ich mich sîn erwere,
(if)-is that I myself of-him defend,

sô mûz daz trôische here
so must the Trojan host

mit schanden rûmen diz lant,
with disgrace clear this land,

mûz ich behalden mîne hant.
(if)-may I keep my hand.

is mir aber daz beschert,
(if)-is to-me but that allotted,

daz sich Ênêas mîn erwert
that himself Aeneas from-me defends

und ich verliese mîn leben,
and I lose my life,

sweme ir danne welt geben
to-whomever you then will give

ûr tohter und ûr rîche,
your daughter and your realm,

daz is mir al gelîche.‘
that is to-me all alike.‘

Dô sprach der kunich Lâtîn
Then spoke the king Latinus

‚sold ich ûwer râtgebe sîn,
‚should I your counselor be,

ich riete û trouwelîche daz,
I would-counsel you faithfully that,

daz ir ûch rehter unde baz
that you yourselves more-rightly and better

bedahtet und berietet.
bethought and counseled.

daz ir den kamph hie bietet
that you the combat here offer

wider den edelen Troiân,
against the noble Trojan,

dazn dunket mich niht wol getân,
that seems to-me not well done,

wandich û wol gûtes gan.
for-I to-you well good grant.

her is ein sigesâlich man,
he is a victory-blessed man,

des mûzet ir mir mite jehen,
of-that must you to-me with avow,

wandirz dicke habet gesehen
for-you-it often have seen

in stormen und in strîten,
in assaults and in fights,

swâ ir ze allen zîten
wherever you at all times

engegen ime quâmet,
toward him came,

daz ir den schaden nâmet
that you the harm took

vil mêr denne Ênêas,
very more than Aeneas,

und doch ûwer here was
and yet your host was

drîstunt grôzer dan daz sîn.
three-times greater than the his.

dar ane wart daz schîn,
there on became that shown,

daz im holfen die gote,
that to-him helped the gods,

wand er mit ir gebote
for he with their command

in diz lant komen is.
into this land come is.

niht verdenket mich des,
not misthink me of-it,

daz ich spreche dorch gût.
that I speak for good.

is daz ir mînen rât tût,
(if)-is that you my counsel do,

ir behaldet ûwern lîb
you keep your life

und moget lant unde wîb
and may land and woman

anders vil wol gwinnen
otherwise very well win

sunder kamph mit minnen.
without combat with love.

sô tût ir wîslîche.
so do you wisely.

ez nis in deme rîche
there is in the realm

nehein wîb noch maget,
no woman nor maiden,

dâ ir willen zû traget
where you will to bear

und der ir gerûchet,
and who you deigns,

is daz ir si sûchet,
(if)-is that you her seek,

sie ne sî û vil gereit.
she not be to-you very ready.

daz is mêre wîsheit,
that is more wisdom,

dan ir verlieset ûwern lîb
than you lose your life

umbe ein lant und umbe ein wîb.‘
for a land and for a woman.‘

Dô sprach Turnûs der rîche
Then spoke Turnus the rich

zû dem kunege zornlîche
to the king angrily

‚ach leider arme,
‚ah alas poor,

daz ich û sus erbarme,
that I you thus move-to-pity,

desn weiz ich û deheinen dank.
of-that know I to-you no thanks.

ich erkenne wol den abewank,
I perceive well the turning-off,

ir mûwet ûch al âne nôt.
you trouble yourselves all without need.

Ênêas mûz den tôt
Aeneas must the death

von mîner hant enphân,
from my hand receive,

older mich ze dôde slân.
or-he me to death slay.

ir stêt mir bôslîchen bî.
you stand to-me wickedly by.

sweder unser ez sî,
whichever of-us it be,

der mûz den lîb verliesen.
he must the life lose.

ich wolde daz ê kiesen,
I would that sooner choose,

daz ich mit êren tôt belibe,
that I with honor dead remain,

danner mich lebende vertribe,
than-he me living drive-out,

der von Troie is geboren:
who of Troy is born:

sô hete ich bôslîche verloren
so had I wickedly lost

ein lant und mîn êre.
a land and my honor.

ichn vorhtin niht sô sêre,
I feared-him not so sorely,

daz ich im mîn lant rûme.
that I to-him my land clear.

ich erbîtes vile kûme,
I await-it very scarcely,

daz wir zwêne ze samene komen.
that we two to gathering come.

ouch hân ich wol vernomen
also have I well heard

ûwer herze und ûwern mût,
your heart and your spirit,

daz ir wider mich niht wole tût,
that you against me not well do,

ir und ûwer râtgeben.
you and your counselors.

unde genert mir got mîn leben
and (if)-saves to-me God my life

und mach ich den sige gewinnen,
and (if)-may I the victory win,

ich gelône û der minnen,
I repay you of-the love,

der ir mir nû bescheinet.
which you to-me now show.

ich weiz wol waz ir meinet:
I know well what you mean:

daz herze habet ir verloren.
the heart have you lost.

ich hete ûr tohter ê gesworen,
I had your daughter ere sworn,

êr irs Ênêase gehiezet:
before you-her to-Aeneas promised:

daz ir mich nû verstiezet
that you me now thrust-out

sô gerne ûzerm lande,
so gladly out-of-your land,

sô wil ichz âne schande
so will I-it without disgrace

verliesen oder gehalden,
lose or keep,

sal es gelucke walden.
(if)-shall of-it fortune rule.

ichn verzîhe mich niht noch.
I renounce me not yet.

nû erkennet ir wol doch
now know you well yet

mîn herze unde mînen sin,
my heart and my sense,

daz ich sô schâfîn niene bin,
that I so sheepish not-at-all am,

ich hân den willen und den mût,
I have the will and the spirit,

daz ich mîn êre und mîn gût
that I my honor and my goods

gerne behalde.
gladly keep.

enbietet ez im balde
send-word it to-him quickly

Ênêase, swâ her sî,
to-Aeneas, wherever he be,

her is ouch hie nâhen bî
he is also here near by

her unde Drances.‘
he and Drances.‘

do gevolgete im der kunich des,
then followed to-him the king of-that,

daz her zÊnêase sande
that he to-Aeneas sent

zwêne vorsten vonme lande
two princes from-the land

umbe alsus getâne nôt
about thus made need

und dem Troiâne enbôt
and to-the Trojan sent-word

alsô dâ geredet was.
as there spoken was.

dô gelobete Ênêas
then vowed Aeneas

vile gerne den einwîch.
very gladly the single-combat.

beide gereitten sie sich
both prepared they themselves

unde swûren der rede
and swore of-the speech

und lengeten den frede
and lengthened the peace

uber vierzehen naht.
over fourteen nights.

sie wâren sô bedaht,
they were so minded,

daz si des kamphes gerden
that they of-the combat desired

mit schilden und mit swerden,
with shields and with swords,

ûf den rossen mit den speren.
on the horses with the spears.

si wolden beide gerne weren
they would both gladly defend

ir êre und ir lîb
their honor and their life

und behalden daz wîb,
and keep the woman,

die maget alsô lussam.
the maiden so lovely.

der kunich gîsel nam
the king hostages took

von den hêren beiden,
from the lords both,

daz siz solden bescheiden
that they-it should settle

sos allerbeste mohten
as-they very-best might

und eine zwêne vohten
and alone two fought

uber vierzehen naht dar nâ.
over fourteen nights there after.

daz gelobetens beide dâ.
that vowed-they both there.

The Queen Teaches Lavinia of Love

XLII

The queen tells Lavinia to love Turnus and hate the Trojan, and Lavinia asks what love is. The queen describes it: it burns and freezes, takes sleep and food, and cannot be withstood; its pain is sweet, and joy follows sorrow. She explains Amor's statue in the temple, with a golden spear that makes men love, a leaden one that makes them hate, and a box of salve that heals. Lavinia dares not love Turnus, for the pain, and when the queen threatens her with death if she loves Aeneas, she answers that she never will.

Dô der kamph gelobet was, 9735
When the combat vowed was,

des Turnûs und Ênêas
of-which Turnus and Aeneas

beide kûme erbeiten,
both scarcely awaited,

und sich dar zû gereiten
and themselves there to prepared

mit manlîchem sinne,
with manly sense,

dô was diu kuniginne 9740
then was the queen

eines âbendes spâte
one evening late

in ir kemenâten.
in her chamber.

ir tohter sie vor sich nam,
her daughter she before herself took,

eine junkfrowen lussam.
a young-lady lovely.

einer rede sie begonde, 9745
a speech she began,

die si vil wole konde,
which she very well could,

mit michelme sinne.
with great sense.

dô sprach diu kuniginne
then spoke the queen

‚scône Lâvîne,
‚fair Lavinia,

liebiu tohter mîne,
dear daughter mine,

nû mach ez lîhte sô komen,
now may it easily so come,

daz dir dîn vater hât genomen
that to-thee thy father has taken

michel gût und êre.
great goods and honor.

Turnûs der helt hêre
Turnus the hero lordly

der dînre minnen starke gert,
who thy love strongly desires,

der is dîn vil wole wert,
he is of-thee very well worthy,

daz is mir wole kunt.
that is to-me well known.

und wârist dû noch tûsent stunt
and wert thou yet thousand times

alsô schône und alsô gût,
so fair and so good,

sô mohtestû wol dînen mût
so mightest-thou well thy spirit

gerne an in kêren.
gladly on him turn.

ich gan dir aller êren
I grant to-thee all honors

und wil daz dû in minnest
and will that thou him lovest

und daz dû bekennest,
and that thou acknowledgest,

daz her ein edele vorste is.
that he a noble prince is.

dar umbe warne ich dich des
there about warn I thee of-it

umbe den helt lussam
about the hero lovely

und wis Ênêase gram,
and be to-Aeneas hostile,

dem unsâligen Troiân,
the unblessed Trojan,

der in ze tôde wil erslân,
who him to death will slay,

den, der dir is von herzen holt.
him, who to-thee is from heart devoted.

dar zû hâstû rehte scholt,
there to hast-thou right cause,

daz dû im ungenâdich sîs
that thou to-him ungracious be

unde im neheine wîs
and to-him no way

niemer êre getûst,
never honor doest,

want duz wole lâzen mûst
for thou-it well let must

und in von rehte hazzen salt,
and him by right hate shalt,

wander dich mit gewalt
for-he thee with force

hie wil erwerben
here will win

unde wil erben
and will inherit

dînes vater rîche.
thy father's realm.

ob dû sâllîche
if thou blessedly

unde wole welles tûn,
and well will do,

tohter sô minne Turnûm.‘
daughter so love Turnus.‘

»wâ mite sal ich in minnen?«
»where with shall I him love?«

,mit dem herzen und mit den sinnen.‘
,with the heart and with the senses.‘

»sal ich im mîn herze geben?«
»shall I to-him my heart give?«

,jâ dû‘. »wie soldich danne geleben?«
,yea thou‘. »how should-I then live?«

,dune salt ez im sô geben niht.‘
,thou shalt it to-him so give not.‘

»waz ob ez niemer geschiht?«
»what if it never happens?«

,und waz, tohter, ob ez tût?‘
,and what, daughter, if it does?‘

»frowe, wie mohte ich mînen mût
»lady, how might I my spirit

an einen man gekêren?«
to a man turn?«

,diu Minne sal dichz lêren.‘
,the Love shall thee-it teach.‘

»dorch got, wer is diu Minne?«
»for God, who is the Love?«

‚si is von aneginne
‚she is from beginning

gewaldich uber die werlt al
mighty over the world all

und immer mêre wesen sal
and ever more be shall

unz an den jungesten tach,
until to the last day,

daz ir nieman ne mach
that her no-one — may

neheine wîs widerstân,
any way withstand,

wande sie is sô getân,
for she is so made,

daz mans ne hôret noch ensiht.‘
that one-her not hears nor sees.‘

»frouwe, der erkenne ich niht.«
»lady, her know I not.«

‚dû salt sie erkennen noch.‘
‚thou shalt her know still.‘

»wan moget irs erbeiten doch,
»but may you-it await yet,

ich erbeites gerne, ob ich mach.«
I await-it gladly, if I may.«

‚lîhte gelebe ich noch den tach,
‚easily live I still the day,

daz dû ungebeten minnest.
that thou unbidden lovest.

swenne dus beginnest,
whenever thou-it beginnest,

dir wirt vil liebe dar zû.‘
to-thee becomes very dear there to.‘

»ichn weiz, frouwe, weder ez tû.«
»I-not know, lady, whether it do.«

‚dû maht es wesen gewis.‘
‚thou mayest of-it be certain.‘

»sô saget mir denne waz minne is.«
»so tell me then what love is.«

‚ichn mach dirs niht gescrîben.‘
‚I can to-thee-it not write.‘

»sô solt irz lâzen blîben.«
»so shall you-it let remain.«

Dô sprach diu kuneginne
Then spoke the queen

‚so getân is diu minne,
‚so made is the love,

daz ez rehte nieman
that it rightly no-one

dem anderen gesagen kan,
to-the other tell can,

dem sîn herze sô stêt,
to-whom his heart so stands,

daz si dar in niene gêt,
that she there into not-at-all goes,

der sô steinlîchen lebet:
who so stonily lives:

swer ir aber rehte entsebet
whoever of-her but rightly perceives

unde zû ir kêret,
and to her turns,

vile si in des lêret,
much she him of-that teaches,

daz im ê was unkunt.
which to-him ere was unknown.

si machet in schiere wunt,
she makes him quickly wounded,

ez sî man oder wîb,
it be man or woman,

sie begrîfet im den lîb
she seizes to-him the body

und die sinne garwe
and the senses wholly

und salewet im die varwe
and sallows to-him the color

mit vil grôzer gewalt.
with very great force.

si machet in vil dicke kalt
she makes him very often cold

und dar nâch sô schiere heiz,
and there after so quickly hot,

daz her sîn selbes rât ne weiz.
that he of-his self counsel not knows.

solich sint ir wâfen:
such are her weapons:

sie benimt imz slâfen
she takes from-him-it sleeping

und ezzen unde trinken.
and eating and drinking.

si lêret in gedenken
she teaches him think

vile misselîche.
very variously.

nieman is sô rîche,
no-one is so rich,

der sich ir moge erweren
who himself from-her may defend

noch sîn herze vor ir generen
nor his heart before her save

noch ne kan noch ne mach.
nor — can nor — may.

nû is des vil manech tach,
now is of-that very many-a day,

deich nie sô vil dar abe gesprach.‘
that-I never so much there off spoke.‘

»frowe, is denn minne ungemach?«
»lady, is then love discomfort?«

‚nein si, niwan nâhen bî.‘
‚no she, except near by.‘

»ich wâne daz si sterker sî
»I ween that she stronger be

dan diu suht oder daz fieber:
than the sickness or the fever:

si wâren mir beidiu lieber,
they were to-me both dearer,

wan man bekêret nâch dem sweize.
for one recovers after the sweat.

minne tût kalt unde heize
love makes cold and hot

mêr denne der viertage rite.«
more than the four-days’ fever.«

‚swer bestricket wirt dâ mite,
‚whoever ensnared becomes there with,

her mûz sich alles des genieten.‘
he must himself of-all that partake.‘

»sô mûze mir si got verbieten.«
»so must to-me her God forbid.«

‚nein, jâ is si vile gût.‘
‚no, yea is she very good.‘

»waz meint denn daz si wê tût?«
»what means then that she woe does?«

‚ir ungemach is sûze.‘
‚her discomfort is sweet.‘

»got gebe, daz sie mich mûze
»God give, that she me must

verren unde vermîden,
keep-far and avoid,

wie soldich die nôt alle erlîden?«
how should-I the distress all suffer?«

Diu mûter aber wider sprach
The mother again back spoke

‚niht envorht daz ungemach, 9870
‚not fear the discomfort,

merke wie ich dirz bescheide:
mark how I to-thee-it explain:

michel lieb kumt von dem leide,
great joy comes from the sorrow,

rûwe kumt nâch ungemache.
rest comes after discomfort.

daz is ein trôstlîche sache.
that is a comforting thing.

gemach kumt von der arbeit 9875
ease comes from the hardship

dicke ze langer stâticheit.
often to long steadfastness.

von rouwe kumet wunne
from rue comes bliss

und froude maneger kunne.
and joy of-many kind.

trûren machet hôhen mût,
sorrowing makes high spirit,

diu angest macht die stâte gût. 9880
the fear makes the steadfastness good.

daz is der Minnen zeichen:
that is of-the Love signs:

lieht varwe kumt nâch der bleichen,
bright color comes after the pale,

diu vorhte gît gûten trôst,
the fear gives good comfort,

mit dem dolne wirt man erlôst,
with the enduring becomes one redeemed,

daz darben tût daz herze rîche.
the want makes the heart rich.

ze diseme dinge iegeslîche
to this thing each

hât diu Minne solhe bûze.‘
has the Love such amends.‘

»sis aber von êrist vil unsûze,
»she-is but at first very unsweet,

ê diu senfticheit kome?«
ere the gentleness come?«

,dû erkennest ir niht ze frome:
,thou knowest of-her nothing to profit:

si sûnet selbe den zorn.‘
she reconciles self the wrath.‘

»diu quâle is zû grôz dâ bevorn.«
»the torment is too great there before.«

,si tût daz dicke under stunden,
,she does that often at times,

daz si heilet die wunden
that she heals the wounds

âne salben und âne trank.‘
without salve and without drink.‘

»diu arbeit is ab ê vil lank.«
»the hardship is but ere very long.«

,tohter, daz stêt an dem glucke
,daughter, that stands in the fortune

sô man gequilet ein lank stucke
when one tormented a long piece

und mit arbeiten gelebet
and with toils lived

und man ungemach entsebet
and one discomfort perceives

von minnen, als ich ê dâ sprach,
from love, as I ere there spoke,

und danne froude und gemach
and then joy and ease

mit dem heile dar nâch komt,
with the fortune there after comes,

wie wol ez dem herzen gefromt
how well it to-the heart profits

und trôstet danne den mût,
and comforts then the spirit,

wandez ime baz tût
for-it to-him better does

unde senfter drîzich warf,
and gentler thirty throws,

dan ders niene bedarf.
than who-of-it not-at-all needs.

des saltû mir von rehte jehen.
of-that shalt-thou to-me by right avow.

dû hâst dicke wol gesehen,
thou hast often well seen,

wie der hêre Amôr stêt
how the lord Amor stands

in dem templô, dâ man in gêt
in the temple, where one in goes

engegen der ture inne,
toward the door within,

daz bezeichent die Minne,
that signifies the Love,
diu gewaldech is ubr alliu lant.
who mighty is over all lands.
ein buhsen hât her an der hant,
a box has he in the hand,
in der ander zwêne gêre:
in the other two spears:
dâ mite schûzet er vil sêre,
there with shoots he very sorely,
als ich dir sagen wolde.
as I to-thee tell would.
ein gêr is von golde,
one spear is of gold,
des phleget her alle stunde.
of-that makes-use he all hours.
swer sô eine wunde
whoever so a wound
dâ mite gewinnet,
there with wins,
vil starklîch er minnet
very strongly he loves
und lebet mit arbeite.
and lives with toil.
neheiner unstâticheite
of-no inconstancy
ne darf man in zîen.
— needs one him accuse.
der ander gêr is blîen,
the other spear is leaden,
von deme tûn ich dir kunt:
of it make I to-thee known:

swer dâ mite wirdet wunt
whoever there with becomes wounded

in sîn herze enbinnen,
into his heart within,

der is der rehten minnen
he is to-the right love

iemer ungehôrsam,
ever disobedient,

her hazęt unde is ir gram.
he hates and is to-her hostile.

swaz sô von minnen geschiht,
whatever so from love happens,

des ne lustet in niht.
of-that — lusts him not.

solich is daz geslehte.
such is the kind.

wil dû nû wizzen rehte,
wilt thou now know rightly,

waz diu buhse bedûte,
what the box signify,

dazn wizzent niht alle lûte,
that know not all people,

merke in allenthalben:
mark it everywhere:

si bezeichent die salben,
it signifies the salve,

die diu Minne ie hât gereit.
which the Love ever has prepared.

diu senftet al die arbeit
it softens all the hardship

und machet ez allez gût,
and makes it all good,

swen diu Minne wunt tût,
whom the Love wounded makes,

daz si in geheilet.
that she him heals.

si gibet unde teilet
she gives and deals

daz lieb nach dem leide.
the joy after the sorrow.

daz saltû merken beide.
that shalt-thou mark both.

daz des von minnen vil geschiht.
that of-that from love much happens.

dune bist ouch sô tumb niht,
thou art also so foolish not,

sô dû dar zû gebâres.
when thou there to bearest-thyself.

ob dû junger wâres
if thou younger were

zweier jâre dan dû sîs,
by-two years than thou art,

dû mohtest wole sîn gewis,
thou mightest well be certain,

dun gelernst ez nimmer ze frû.
thou learnest it never too early.

dû hâst ouch lîb genûch dar zû
thou hast also body enough there to

gewahsen unde scône.
grown and fair.

daz ich dirs immer lône
that I to-thee-it ever reward

mit minnen und mit gûte,
with love and with goods,

diz behabe in dînem mûte,
this keep in thy mind,

want dû mûst doch minnen phlegen.
for thou must yet love keep.

von diu minne den kûnen degen
from that love the bold warrior

Turnûm den edelen vorsten.‘
Turnus the noble prince.‘

»ich ne mohte noch getorsten.«
»I — might nor dared.«

‚war umbe?‘ »dorch die arbeit.«
‚where fore?‘ »for the hardship.«

‚jâ is ez michel senfticheit.‘
‚yea is it great gentleness.‘

»wie moht daz senfticheit sîn?«
»how might that gentleness be?«

‚got weiz, liebe tohter mîn,
‚God knows, dear daughter mine,

ich weiz wol daz dû minnen mûst,
I know well that thou love must,

swie ungerne dû ez tûst.
however unwillingly thou it doest.

wirde ich des innen,
become I of-it aware,

daz dû Ênêam wilt minnen
that thou Aeneas wilt love

und uns sô entêres,
and us so dishonorest,

daz dû dîn herze kêres
that thou thy heart turnest

an den bôsen Troiân,
to the evil Trojan,

ich heize dich ze dôde slân
I bid thee to death slay

unde martere dînen lîb,
and torment thy body,

ê dû iemer werdest sîn wîb.
ere thou ever become his woman.

her enbirt wol solhes wîbes,
he forgoes well such woman,

hern sal dînes lîbes
he shall of-thy body

niemer sich genieten.‘
never himself partake.‘

»ir moget mirz lîht verbieten,
»you may to-me-it easily forbid,

ichn gewans nie willen.«
I won-it never will.«

dô sweich diu frouwe stille,
then was-silent the lady still,

in zorne gienk si hin dane
in wrath went she away thence

unde sach die tohter ane
and looked the daughter at

vile ungûtlîche
very unkindly

diu kuneginne rîche.
the queen rich.

Lavinia Struck by Love

XLIII

During the truce Aeneas rides out to the walls of Laurentum, and Lavinia sees him from a window high in the palace. Venus shoots her with a sharp arrow, and she sweats, trembles, turns pale and red, and knows the sickness her mother described. In a long monologue she sees that it is love, that Amor has shot her with the golden spear, that she cannot share it between two men, and that she loves the very man her mother forbade.

Nû hôret eine ander rede.
Now hear an other tale.

ze Laurente was der frede
at Laurentum was the peace

gestadeget unde gesworen,
confirmed and sworn,

als ich û sagete dâ bevoren,
as I to-you told there before,

sô dâz in beiden sîten
so that-they on both sides

ze samene mohten rîten
to gathering might ride

mit fride und mit minnen
with peace and with love

von ûzen unde von innen
from outside and from inside

beidiu rîten unde gân.
both ride and go.

daz wart dicke alsô getân,
that was often so done,

want der frede gût was.
for the peace good was.

eins tages hiez im Ênêas
one day bade for-himself Aeneas

ein ros dare bringen.
a horse thither bring.

mit sînen jungelingen
with his younglings

wolder sich banechen rîten.
would-he himself for-pleasure ride.

in den selben zîten,
in the same times,

sint daz die kuneginne
since that the queen

geredete umb die minne
spoke about the love

wider die maget lussam,
to the maiden lovely,

vor Laurente her geriten quam
before Laurentum he ridden came

vaste an die mûren,
close to the walls,

und die mit ime fûren.
and those-who with him fared.

dô gehabete Ênêas
then halted Aeneas

engegen des kuneges palas
toward the king's palace

beide er und die sîne.
both he and the his-own.

dô was diu maget Lavîne
then was the maiden Lavinia

gegangen ûf ein palas hô
gone onto a palace high

und ez gefûchte sich alsô,
and it befell itself so,

daz Ênêas hielt ûf dem graben.
that Aeneas halted on the ditch.

dô sach diu junkfrowe her abe
then looked the young-lady hither down

von dem venster dâ si lach.
from the window where she lay.

den hêren sie wol besach,
the lord she well beheld,

den minnesâlegen Troiân.
the love-blessed Trojan.

wie wart her ie sô wol getân,
how was he ever so well made,

hern mohte niemer schôner sîn!
he might never more-beautiful be!

daz hete ouch daz magedîn
that had also the maiden

dâ bevor vil wol vernomen.
there before very well heard.

dô her dô dare was komen,
when he then thither was come,

do gesach sie die wârheit.
then saw she the truth.

des gewan si michel arbeit.
of-that won she great hardship.

Dô der hêre dare quam
When the lord thither came

und sîn diu maget lussam
and of-him the maiden lovely

dâ nidene wart gewar
there below became aware

und si ir ougen kêrde dar,
and she her eyes turned thither,

dâ si was ûf deme hûs:
where she was on the house:

dô schôz si frouwe Vênûs
then shot her lady Venus

mit einer scharphen strâle.
with a sharp arrow.

daz wart ir al ze quâle
that became to-her all to torment

sint uber ein lange stunden.
since over a long hour.

si gewan eine wunden
she won a wound

an ir herze enbinnen,
in her heart within,

sô daz si mûste minnen,
so that she must love,

si wolde oder enwolde,
she would or not-would,

dâ si ir mûter holde
where she her mother's favor

al mitalle mit verlôs,
all with-all with lost,

want si bran und si frôs
for she burned and she froze

in vil korzen stunden;
in very short hours;

sine wiste niht der wunden,
she knew not of-the wound,

dâ ir daz ubel vone quam.
where to-her the evil from came.

vile schiere sie vernam
very quickly she perceived

irre mûter geheiz:
her mother's promise:

sie wart unmâzen heiz
she became beyond-measure hot

unde dar nâch schiere sal.
and there after quickly sallow.

wande si unsanfte qual,
for she ungently suffered,

si switzete unde bebete,
she sweated and trembled,

unsanfte sie lebete,
ungently she lived,

sie wart bleich unde rôt.
she became pale and red.

vile michel was ir nôt
very great was her distress

unde ir lîbes ungemach.
and her body's discomfort.

do gewan si maht unde sprach. 10060
then won she might and spoke.

Dô ir daz herze wider quam,
When to-her the heart back came,

dô sprach diu maget lussam
then spoke the maiden lovely

ir selber jâmmerlîche zû
to-her self wretchedly to

‚nune weiz ich leider waz ich tû,
‚now-not know I alas what I do,

ouch enweiz ich waz mir werret, 10065
also not-know I what me ails,

daz ich sus bin vererret:
that I thus am confused:

mirn wart solhes mê niht kunt.
to-me became such more not known.

nû was ich iezû al gesunt
now was I just-now all healthy

unde bin nû vil nâ tôt.
and am now very nearly dead.

mir wâre gûtes râtes nôt.
to-me were of-good counsel need.

wer hât sus gebunden
who has thus bound

mîn herze in korzen stunden,
my heart in short hours,

daz ê was ledechlîchen frî?
which ere was freely free?

ich vorht daz ez der kumber sî,
I fear that it the trouble be,

dâ mich mîn mûter trôste zû.
of-which me my mother comforted to.

her is mir komen alze frû,
he is to-me come all-too early,

niwan daz si michs niht erliez,
except that she me-of-it not spared,

Minne oder swie siz hiez —
Love or however she-it called—

jâ si nandez Minne.
yea she named-it Love.

wie wol ich nû erkenne
how well I now know

daz freislîche ungemach.
that terrible discomfort.

ez is als mîn mûter sprach,
it is as my mother spoke,

mîn frouwe, diu mich getrûch.
my lady, who me bore.

wê daz si mirs ie zû gewûch!
woe that she to-me-of-it ever to mentioned!

ich ne soldez ir wîzen niet:
I — should-it to-her blame not:

ichn minne niht daz sie mir riet,
I love not whom she to-me counseled,

ich ne darf niht von ir klagen.
I — need not of her lament.

al hete sie mirs niht gewagen,
all had she to-me-of-it not mentioned,

ez wâre doch alsus komen.
it were yet thus come.

eteswaz mach mir daz gefromen,
something may to-me that profit,

daz ich nû sô vil drumbe weiz,
that I now so much thereof know,

wandich bin kalt unde heiz
for-I am cold and hot

an mîme lîbe enbinnen.
in my body within.

ich weiz wol deis von minnen,
I know well that-it-is from love,

diu mir ê unkunt was,
which to-me ere unknown was,

wan sint der hêre Ênêas
for since the lord Aeneas

hûte dâ her geriten quam
today there hither ridden came

und ich den helt lussam
and I the hero lovely

allerêrste gesach,
first-of-all saw,

des ich vergezzen niene mach,
of-which I forget not-at-all may,

den vil edelen Troiân.
the very noble Trojan.

wie wart her ie sô wol getân,
how was he ever so well made,

sîn houbet und aller sîn lîb!
his head and all his body!

ichn weiz ob in alliu wîb
I-not know if him all women

alsô minnen die in gesehen.
so love who him have-seen.

nein si, wie moht daz geschehen,
no they, how might that happen,

want daz ichz lâzen niene mach.
for that I-it let not-at-all may.

mir is leit daz ich in ie gesach,
to-me is grievous that I him ever saw,

nû ichs sus hân genozzen.
now I-it thus have enjoyed.

Amôr hât mich geschozzen
Amor has me shot

mit dem goldînen gêre.
with the golden spear.

des mûz ich quelen sêre
of-that must I suffer sorely

und ez koufen tûre.
and it buy dearly.

mit dem heizen fûre
with the hot fire

brennet mich frou Vênûs.
burns me lady Venus.

ichn mach niht langer leben sus.‘
I may not longer live thus.‘

Aber sprach diu maget junge
Again spoke the maiden young

‚ez ne mohte nehein zunge
‚it — might no tongue

nimmer vore bringen
ever forth bring

mit deheinen dingen
with any things

daz ungemach daz ich entsebe.
the discomfort which I perceive.

daz ich sus switze unde bebe
that I thus sweat and tremble

in sus korzen stunden,
in so short hours,

ez kumt mir von der wunden
it comes to-me from the wound

der unsenfter Minne,
of-the ungentle Love,

diu mich dâ derret inne
who me there dries inside

und mîn herze machet vale,
and my heart makes pale,

des wirdich vile schiere sale.
of-that become-I very quickly sallow.

wannen komt mir der mût,
whence comes to-me the spirit,

daz ez mir sus wê tût,
that it to-me thus woe does,

ich lige oder sitze,
I lie or sit,

nâch sus unrehter hitze
after so wrong heat

und sus unrehter kalde?
and so wrong cold?

daz salwet mich vil balde
that sallows me very quickly
und verderbet mir den lîb.
and ruins to-me the body.
mîn mûter is ein listisch wîb
my mother is a cunning woman
und weiz von solhen dingen vil.
and knows of such things much.
swenne si mich nû frâgen wil,
whenever she me now ask will,
wie ich sus ubele sî getân,
how I thus ill be made,
wie sal ichz danne ane vân?
how shall I-it then on undertake?
swenne sô si mich gesiht,
whenever so she me sees,
son hilfet mich mîn lougen niht,
so helps me my denial not,
wan si kan ez wol ersehen.
for she can it well see.
ichn getar es aber niht gejehen.
I dare it but not avow.
von diu bin ich des gewis,
from that am I of-it certain,
daz ez mîn ungelucke is
that it my misfortune is
oder betalle mîn tôt,
or wholly my death,
want den man, den si mir verbôt,
for the man, whom she to-me forbade,
den minne ich zunmâzen.
him love I beyond-measure.
jâ mach ich ez wol lâzen,
yea may I it well let,

ob ich ubel dar ane tû.
if I ill there on do.

wer twinget mich dar zû?
who forces me there to?

daz tût diu starke minne,
that does the strong love,

diu bringet mich ûẓer sinne,
she brings me out-of senses,

des bin ich vil unfrô.
of-that am I very unglad.

der minnen got Cupidô
the love's god Cupid

und Amôr sîn brûder
and Amor his brother

und Vênûs ir mûder
and Venus their mother

diu hânt mich unsanfte verwunt.
they have me ungently wounded.

mir is schiere worden kunt
to-me is quickly become known

der starken minne ungemach.
of-the strong love discomfort.

wandich von in missesprach,
for-I of them misspoke,

daz hânt si an mir gerochen.
that have they on me avenged.

hete ich iht mêr gesprochen,
had I anything more spoken,

ich hetes gnûch engolden.
I had-of-it enough paid.

und ob ichs hete bescholden.
and if I-them had reviled.

des ne tete ich aber niet,
that — did I but not,

niwan daz mir mîn herze riet,
except that to-me my heart counseled,

daz ich mich ir wolde erweren.
that I myself from-her would defend.

ichn mach mich niht vor in generen,
I may me not before them save,

ich bin dem Troiâr alze holt:
I am to-the Trojan all-too devoted:

ich wâne daz is mîn scholt.
I ween that is my guilt.

wes luste mich daz ich in sach?
of-what lusted me that I him saw?

daz ich nû wol sprechen mach,
that I now well speak may,

niwan deiz alsô mûste geschehen?
except that-it so must happen?

ich hân vil dicke gesehen
I have very often seen

manegen wol getânen man,
many-a well made man,

dâ ich nie minne zû gewan,
where I never love to won,

und manegen man gemeiten,
and many-a man glad,

an den mich nie geleiten
to whom me never lead

ne mohte lîb noch mût,
— might body nor spirit,

ich hân mich wol dâ vor behût,
I have myself well there before guarded,

und manegen schônen jungelink,
and many-a fair youngling,

ez wâre ein unsâlich dink,
it were an unblessed thing,

ob des mîn herze phlâge,
if of-that my heart kept,

alle die ich gesâge,
all those-whom I saw,

daz ich die mûste minnen.
that I them must love.

ich kan mich des versinnen,
I can myself of-that bethink,

minnete ich mê dan einen, 10185
loved I more than one,

sone minnete ich deheinen:
so loved I none:

daz weiz ich wole âne wân.
that know I well without doubt.

diu minne nis niht sô getân,
the love is not so made,

daz man sie geteilen moge
that one her divide may

sô daz sie iemanne toge. 10190
so that she to-anyone avails.

Lavinia's Night of Love-Sickness

XLIV

Lavinia goes on lamenting: if Aeneas was struck with the leaden spear, her love is hopeless. She addresses Love, Venus, and Amor, says she hates Turnus and will die rather than be his, and asks herself how to tell Aeneas without shame. She watches him ride back to his tent until night takes the light.

Wannen komet mir der sin,
Whence comes to-me the sense,

daz ich sus wîse worden bin,
that I thus wise become am,

des ich ê sô tumb was?
of-which I ere so foolish was?

ez lêret mich Ênêas,
it teaches me Aeneas,

daz mir daz is worden kunt.
that to-me that is become known.

von sînen minnen bin ich wunt
from his love am I wounded

und lîde micheln ungemach.
and suffer great discomfort.

diu salbe die mîn mûter sprach,
the salve which my mother spoke,

diu mich heilen solde,
which me heal should,

wie gerne ich wizzen wolde,
how gladly I know would,

wie senfte sie wâre!
how gentle she were!

ez wâre ein bezzer mâre,
it were a better tidings,

daz si mir schiere quâme
that she to-me quickly should-come

und mîme herzen nâme
and from-my heart took

dise unsenfte swâre,
this ungentle heaviness,

der ich vil gerne enbâre.
which I very gladly would-forgo.

nû waz salben moht daz wesen,
now what salve might that be,

dâ ich mite mohte genesen
where I with might recover

sus getâner minnen?
of-such made love?

mohte ich die gewinnen,
might I that win,

daz wâre grôz rîcheit.
that were great riches.

ich vorhte abr sie sî ungereit,
I fear but it be unready,

ich wâne mîn teil sî verloren:
I ween my part be lost:

sô wart ich unheiles geboren,
so was I of-misfortune born,

daz is mir wol worden kunt.
that is to-me well become known.

und is der hêre Ênêas wunt
if is the lord Aeneas wounded

mit dem blîgen gêre,
with the leaden spear,

daz her hazzet sêre
that he hates sorely

al daz von minnen geschiht,
all that from love happens,

daz ich in minne und her mich niht,
that I him love and he me not,

sô ne mach ich niht genesen.
so — can I not recover.

der gelieben mûzen zwei wesen,
of-the lovers must two be,

diu sich underminnen
who each-other love

unde mit ir sinnen
and with their senses

ir willen vollebringen
their will accomplish

mit gûtlîchen dingen,
with kindly things,

obs iemer rât werden sal.
if-it ever remedy become shall.

wer hât mich diz gelêret al,
who has me this taught all,

daz ich ez nû sô wole kan
that I it now so well can

und ich es doch nie began?
and I it yet never began?

ich kondes lutzel hûte frû:
I could-it little today early:

ich kan ez sô wol iezû,
I can it so well now,

des is mîn herze vile swâr.
of-that is my heart very heavy.

mîn mûter sagete mir wâr
my mother told me true

diu wîse kuneginne,
the wise queen,

si sprach, daz mich diu Minne
she spoke, that me the Love

wol gelêren solde
well teach should

des ich niht enwolde
which I not would

tûn noch dorch ir bete.
do nor for her request.

daz ich sô ungerne tete,
that I so unwillingly did,

wer hât mirz geliebet sô?
who has to-me-it endeared so?

Amôr unde Cupidô
Amor and Cupid

und diu gotinne Vênûs:
and the goddess Venus:

von ir scholden quele ich sus
by their guilt suffer I thus

unde von ir wunden.
and from their wounds.

Minne, ich hân dich funden
Love, I have thee found

bitter albetalle.
bitter altogether.

Minne, dû bist noch galle,
Love, thou art yet gall,

Minne, nû wirt sûze,
Love, now become sweet,

daz ich dich loben mûze.
that I thee praise must.

Minne, senfte mir etewaz,
Love, soften for-me somewhat,

deich dir gedienen moge baz.
that-I to-thee serve may better.

Minne, sal ich iht lange leben,
Love, shall I at-all long live,

sô mûst dû mir trôst geben
so must thou to-me comfort give

mit etelîchem sinne.
with some sense.

waz hilfet dich daz, Minne,
what helps thee that, Love,

daz ich sus smilze enbinne?
that I thus melt within?

dû heizest unreht Minne,
thou art-called wrongly Love,

als ich dich noch bekenne:
as I thee still know:

dû bist ein quelerinne.
thou art a torturess.

Vênûs hêre gotinne,
Venus lordly goddess,

gesenfte mir die minne
soften for-me the love

(sprach diu kuneginne),
(spoke the queen),

unze ich bekenne
until I know

die rehten art der minne.
the right kind of-the love.

dû treges salbe, Minne,
thou bearest salve, Love,

is daz ich der gewinne
(if)-is that I of-it win

so genese ich, edeliu Minne,
so am-saved I, noble Love,

und hâstus michel êre,
and hast-thou-of-it great honor,

ich quele alsus ze sêre.
I suffer thus too sorely.

Amôr (sprach si), der minnen got,
Amor (spoke she), the love's god,

zebrach ich ie dîn gebot,
broke I ever thy command,

daz hân ich harde garnet.
that have I greatly earned.

ich was des ungewarnet,
I was of-it unwarned,

daz dû mich sus ane quâmest
that thou me thus at camest

unde mir sus schiere nâmest
and from-me thus quickly tookest

den lîb und die maht al.
the body and the might all.

sint daz ich dir dienen sal,
since that I to-thee serve shall,

sô mûz ich swâre burden tragen.
so must I heavy burdens bear.

ich wâne ich mûz von dir klagen,
I ween I must of thee lament,

wiste ich weme oder wâ.
knew I to-whom or where.

nû is aber verre noch nâ
now is but far nor near

nieman, der dich betwingen moge,
no-one, who thee compel may,

der anders sprâche der loge,
who otherwise spoke he lied,

dû betwingest algelîche
thou compellest alike

arme unde rîche,
poor and rich,

daz man dir der meisterschefte giht.
that one to-thee the mastery avows.

dune hâst von niemanne niht,
thou hast from no-one anything,

diu werlt is al dîn eigen,
the world is all thine own,

dune wellest mich gesweigen
unless-thou will me silence

mit etelîchem gûte.
with some good.

des mir is ze mûte,
of-which to-me is in mind,

des rede ich lîhte ze vile,
of-that speak I easily too much,

wandez gêt mir ûz dem spile.
for-it goes to-me out-of the game.

dû bestunde mich ze frû,
thou attackedst me too early,

ich bin ze kint noch dar zû:
I am too child still there to:

wârich der sterkiste man,
were-I the strongest man,

der in der werlde ie lîb gewan,
who in the world ever body won,

dû hetest mir schiere wê getân,
thou hadst to-me quickly woe done,

woldest dû mich sus ane gân,
wouldst thou me thus at go,

als dû hâst begunnen.
as thou hast begun.

hetest dû mir gegunnen,
hadst thou to-me granted,

deich Turnûm mûste minnen
that-I Turnus must love

mit mâzlîchen sinnen,
with measured senses,

des gonde mir mîn mûter baz.
that granted me my mother rather.

ôwê, war umbe sprach ich daz?
alas, where fore spoke I that?

ichn mohtez nimmer getûn,
I might-it never do,

jâ hazzich hêren Turnûm
yea hate-I lord Turnus

mê dan deheinen man,
more than any man,

wie moht ich in minnen dan?
how might I him love then?

ichn weiz wan mir daz wort quam.
I-not know whence to-me the word came.

war umbe bin ich ime gram?
where fore am I to-him hostile?

dorch Ênêases willen.
for Aeneas's sake.

des mûz ich swîgen stille,
of-that must I be-silent still,

daz ez mîner mûter iht vor kome:
that it to-my mother not-at-all before come:

ez geviele ir niht ze frome,
it would-befall her not to profit,

vernâme sie daz mâre.
should-hear she the tidings.

ich weiz wol daz mir wâre
I know well that to-me were

vile bezzer getân,
much better done,

deich Turnûm und den Troiân
that-I Turnus and the Trojan

gelîche minnete beide,
alike loved both,

denn ich mîn herze scheide
than I my heart part

von Turnô sô verre.
from Turnus so far.

ich vorhte deiz mir werre,
I fear that-it me harm,

als ez vil lîhte komen mach.
as it very easily come may.

schiere komet der tach,
quickly comes the day,

daz si vehten mûzen
that they fight must

ze rossen oder ze fûzen,
on horses or on feet,

als daz tagedink geliget.
as the court-day lies.

sweder ir dâ gesiget,
whichever of-them there triumphs,

der sal mich behalden.
he shall me keep.

die gote mûzens walden,
the gods must-it rule,

daz Ênêas der hêre
that Aeneas the lord

gestadege sîn êre
confirm his honor

und behabe sînen lîb,
and keep his life,

wande Turnûses wîb
for Turnus's woman

ne wil ich niemer werden.
— will I never become.

alle die ûf der erden
all who on the earth

ie worden und noch leben
ever became and still live

ne mohten mir den rât gegeben
not might to-me the counsel give

noch dar zû getwingen
nor there to compel

mit deheiner slahte dingen,
with any kind things,

ich wolde ê ersterben,
I would sooner die,

ê ez ieman mohte erwerben,
ere it anyone might win,

daz ich in wolde minnen,
that I him would love,

und soldich dar mit gwinnen
and should-I there with win

allez ertrîche.
all earth.

von diu sprach ich tumblîche,
from that spoke I foolishly,

ich ne weiz wer mirz geriet.
I not know who to-me-it counseled.

jane mach ich die Minne niet
yea may I the Love not

sô enzwei geteilen.
so in-two divide.

sie sal mir noch heilen
she shall to-me still heal

mîn unsenfte wunden,
my ungentle wounds,

die mir nû ze stunden
which to-me now at times

alsus trûbent mînen mût.
thus trouble my spirit.

ez sal mir noch al werden gût,
it shall to-me still all become good,

swenne mir got gibet daz heil.
whenever to-me God gives the fortune.

mir is gesenftet ein teil,
to-me is softened a part,

wande daz hât mir getân
for that has to-me done

hoffenunge unde wân:
hope and expectation:

diu gebent mir beidiu gûten trôst,
they give to-me both good comfort,

daz ich noch werde erlôst,
that I still become redeemed,

und siz bringen dar zû
and they-it bring there to

daz mir diu Minne sanfte tû,
that to-me the Love gently do,

diu mir sus wê hât getân.
which to-me thus woe has done.

von diu wil ich den Troiân
from that will I the Trojan

minnen stâtechlîche.
love steadfastly.

und ob al ertrîche
and if all earth-realm

Turnûses wâre,
Turnus's were,

her wâre mir doch unmâre
he were to-me yet indifferent

wider den edelen Troiân.
against the noble Trojan.

wie moht ich gekêren dan
how might I turn then

mîn herze an zwêne mân?
my heart to two men?

ich ne mach noch enkan,
I — may nor can,

ich ne wil noch enmach.
I — will nor may.

sint daz ich gesach
since that I saw

Ênêam den rîchen,
Aeneas the rich,

sô mûste mir entwîchen
so must from-me give-way

mîn herze und mîn sin.
my heart and my sense.

wister daz ich ime bin
knew-he that I to-him am

sô unmâzlîchen holt
so beyond-measure devoted

âne menneschlîche scholt,
without human guilt,

der ich nie kunde gewan,
of-whom I never acquaintance won,

hern wâre nie sô ubel man,
he were never so evil man,

hern mûste mich minnen.
he-not must me love.

ichn weiz des wie beginnen,
I-not know of-it how begin,

deichz immer vore bringe
that-I-it ever forth bring

mit deheinem dinge.'
with any thing.'

Dô si des alles vil gesprach
When she of-that all much spoke

und wunne unde ungemach
and bliss and discomfort

in trûregem herzen underschiet
in sorrowful heart distinguished

(alsus saget uns daz liet)
(thus tells us the song)

und des alles vile was:
and of-that all much was:

dô reit der hêre Ênêas
then rode the lord Aeneas

ze sîme gezelde hin wider.
to his tent away back.

dô was sie vil nâ dar nider
then was she very nearly there down

gevallen in ir ungewalt.
fallen in her powerlessness.

daz herze wart ir vile kalt
the heart became to-her very cold

unde ir scône lîb al.
and her fair body all.

,nune weiz ich leider war ich sal,
,now-not know I alas whither I shall,

daz ich den man mûz minnen,
that I the man must love,

der alsus veret hinnen,
who thus fares hence,

daz her mich niht ane siht.
that he me not at looks.

leider dâ ne weiz hers niht,
alas there — knows he-it not,

daz mîn herze mit im vert.
that my heart with him goes.

ôwê daz mir daz was beschert,
alas that to-me that was allotted,

daz ich von minnen sus mûz quelen!
that I from love thus must suffer!

ich stirbe, sal ich ez helen.
I die, shall I it hide.

wie sal ichz danne ane vân,
how shall I-it then on undertake,

daz ichz in lâze verstân
that I-it him let understand

âne grôze missewende?
without great fault?

ob ich im einen boten sende
if I to-him a messenger send

und ime enbiete wiez mir stât,
and to-him send-word how-it to-me stands,

und ob herz danne ubel enphât
and if he-it then ill receives

und merketz niht ze gûte
and takes-it not to good

und denket in sînem mûte
and thinks in his mind

vil ubellîche dar zû
very ill there to

und wânet als ich ime tû,
and supposes as I to-him do,

daz ichz ouch andern habe getân,
that I-it also to-others have done,

wie mohtez mir dan wol ergân?
how might-it to-me then well turn-out?

sone wirdet her mir nimmer holt.
so becomes he to-me never devoted.

umb alsus getâne scholt
for so made guilt

lîdich kumber unde nôt.
suffer-I trouble and distress.

einhalb vorhte ich den tôt,
on-one-side fear I the death,

anderhalb vorhtich sêre
on-the-other-side fear-I sorely

mîner werltlîchen êre,
for-my worldly honor,

daz ich die niht behalde.
that I it not keep.

nû vert her hine balde —
now goes he away quickly

weiz got leider jâ her tût!
knows God alas yea he does!

stunde im iht ze mir sîn mût,
stood to-him at-all to me his spirit,

her nâme mîn etlîche ware.
he would-take of-me some heed.

ichn darf ouch rûchen war her vare,
I-not need also care whither he fare,

ich rûches ab leider al ze vil,
I care-of-it but alas all too much,

mir is leit daz her noch hinnen wil,
to-me is grievous that he still hence will,

daz im zer verte is alsô gâch.‘
that to-him to-the journey is so hasty.‘

si sach im trûrechlîchen nâch
she looked to-him sorrowfully after

und markte wâ her hine rite.
and marked where he away rode.

mit den ougen volgete sime mite
with the eyes followed she-him with

so si aller verrest mohte
as she of-all farthest might

(wandez sie dohte
(for-it her seemed

ein michel senfticheit)
a great gentleness)

den wech den her hine reit:
the way which he away rode:

der dûht si deste baz getân.
it seemed to-her the better made.

dô reit der edele Troiân
then rode the noble Trojan

frôlîche uber daz velt
joyfully over the field

und erbeizte vor sîn gezelt.
and dismounted before his tent.

des nam si vile rehte war
of-that took she very rightly heed

und sach vil ernesthafte dar.
and looked very earnestly thither.

ir ouge nie danne quam,
her eye never thence came,

unz ir diu naht daz lieht benam.
until to-her the night the light took.

The Name on the Tablet

XLV

Lavinia cannot eat or sleep. In the morning her mother sees her pallor and presses her, and Lavinia admits she is in love but not with Turnus. Too ashamed to say the name, she writes it on her wax tablet letter by letter, E, N, E, A, S. The queen curses her, calls Aeneas a man who does not love women, and reminds her of Dido. Lavinia defends him and says Cupid and Venus have put his love into her heart.

Dô zergangen was der tach,
When passed was the day,

unde sie niht mêr gesach
and she not more saw

und si ezzen solde gân,
and she eat should go,

dô moht si kûme ûf gestân,
then might she scarcely up stand,

diu junkfrouwe lussam.
the young-lady lovely.

dô sie aber danne quam
when she but then came

unde uber tisch gesaz,
and at table sat,

sie ne trank noch enaz,
she — drank nor ate,

si wiste kûme waz man sprach.
she knew scarcely what one spoke.

vil michel was ir ungemach,
very great was her discomfort,

des dâ nieman war nam.
of-which there no-one heed took.

do si aber an daz bette quam
when she but onto the bed came

unde slâfen solde,
and sleep should,

si wolde oder enwolde,
she would or not-would,

si mûste wachen al die naht.
she must wake all the night.

diu minne hâte grôze maht,
the love had great might,

diu si vil unsanfte twank.
which her very ungently forced.

diu wîle dûhte sie vil lank
the while seemed to-her very long

bî tage und bî nahte.
by day and by night.

mislîche sie dahte,
variously she thought,

als sie diu minne lêrde.
as her the love taught.

dicke sie sich kêrde
often she herself turned

an ietwedere sîten.
on each side.

si hete an korzen zîten
she had in short times

mislîche sinne.
various senses.

‚ôwê' sprach si ‚Minne,
‚alas' spoke she ‚Love,

wie unsanfte dû mir tûst,
how ungently thou to-me doest,

niwan daz duz wol tûn mûst
except that thou-it well do must

und ich niht wider dich ne mach
and I not against thee — may

10480 und sich naht unde tach
and itself night and day

mîn ungemach mêret!
my discomfort increases!

dune hâst mich niht gelêret
thou hast me not taught

anders denne ungemach.
other than discomfort.

daz mîn mûter dâ von sprach,
that my mother there of spoke,

10485 daz dû mir soldest
that thou to-me shouldst

senftigen ob dû woldest,
soften if thou wouldst,

ich weiz wannen daz sal komen,
I know whence that shall come,

desn hân ich noch niht vernomen,
of-that have I still not heard,

dar umbe is mir vile wê.
there about is to-me very woe.

10490 ich wâne ich smilze als der snê,
I ween I melt as the snow,

so an in diu sunne schînet heiz.
when on it the sun shines hot.

ôwê waz ich al weiz
alas what I all know

des ubelen des von dir geschiht!
of-the evil which from thee happens!

des gûten des ne weiz ich niht,
of-the good of-that — know I not,

daz hâstû mich ie noch verholen,
that hast-thou me ever still concealed,

dazn mach ich langer niht verdolen.‘
that may I longer not endure.‘

Dô Lavîne al die naht
When Lavinia all the night

mit dem leide alsus vaht,
with the sorrow thus fought,

daz ir diu varewe abe nam,
that from-her the color off took,

und si des morgens ûf quam,
and she in-the morning up came,

dô was ez verre ûf den tach,
then was it far upon the day,

und si ir mûder besach,
and her her mother saw,

daz si sô ubele was gevar,
that she so ill was colored,

dô wart si vile wol gewar,
then became she very well aware,

daz ir dink unrehte fûr.
that her thing wrongly went.

listechlîche sie si beswûr
cunningly she her adjured

diu kuneginne mâre
the queen famous

und frâget si wie si wâre
and asked her how she were

sô varlôs und sô bleich?
so colorless and so pale?

diu maget ersûhte unde sweich
the maiden sighed and was-silent

und wart von angesten rôt.
and became from fears red.

daz lêrde sie diu nôt
that taught her the need

daz sir einer luge erdahte.
that she-for-her a lie thought-up.

si sprach vil ernestahte
she spoke very earnestly

,frowe, ich bin verirret,
,lady, I am confused,

ichn weiz waz mir wirret,
I-not know what me ails,

weder diu suht oder der rite,
whether the sickness or the fever,

dâ ich bin bevangen mite,
where I am seized with,

daz is mir wol worden schîn.‘
that is to-me well become shown.‘

»got weiz« sprach si »tohter mîn,
»God knows« spoke she »daughter mine,

swie wol dû kunnest liegen,
however well thou canst lie,

dune maht mich niht betriegen,
thou mayest me not deceive,

dû mûst der wârheite jehen.
thou must the truth avow.

nâch diu und ich hân gesehen,
after that and I have seen,

dune darfst niht valschen dîniu wort.
thou needest not falsify thy words.

ich hân dîn sûhten wol gehôrt,
I have thy sighing well heard,

daz ich vil wol bekenne.
that I very well perceive.

tohter, ez is minne,
daughter, it is love,

dâ mit dû bist gebunden:
there with thou art bound:

du enphindest der wunden,
thou feelest the wound,

dâ von ich anders tages sprach.
there of I another day spoke.

dû hâst daz sûze ungemach,
thou hast the sweet discomfort,

daz was mir ouch hie vore kunt,
that was to-me also here before known,

dû quelest und bist idoch gesunt«
thou sufferest and art yet healthy«

sprach diu frouwe rîche,
spoke the lady rich,

»dû bist untôtlîche
»thou art undying

beidiu kalt unde heiz.«
both cold and hot.«

‚sô wizzet ir daz ich ne weiz'
‚so know you what I not know'

sprach daz edele magedîn.
spoke the noble maiden.

»got weiz, liebiu tohter mîn,
»God knows, dear daughter mine,

dû weist ez unde ich merkez ouch:
thou knowest it and I mark-it also:

lâz dîn lougen, ez entouch,
leave thy denial, it not-avails,

ez ne verstet niht ein hâr.«
it — avails not a hair.«

‚frouwe' sprach si ‚wâre ez wâr,
‚lady' spoke she ‚were it true,

war umbe soldichz ûch dan helen?
where fore should-I-it to-you then hide?

man mach unsanfte quelen,
one may ungently suffer,

vasten unde wachen
fasting and waking

an andern ungemachen
in other discomforts

als wol sô von minne.‘
as well as from love.‘

dô sprach diu kuneginne
then spoke the queen

»jâ tohter, des alein,
»yea daughter, of-that alone,

ezn wart nie ungemach dehein,
there was never discomfort any,

des man sô lange mohte leben.
of-which one so long might live.

ich hân dir urloub gegeben,
I have to-thee leave given,

daz dû minnest Turnûm.«
that thou lovest Turnus.«

‚desne mach ich niht getûn.‘
‚that may I not do.‘

»tohter, dorch welhe scholt?«
»daughter, for what cause?«

‚mîn herze is ime unholt,
‚my heart is to-him hostile,

daz ne mach noch enkan.‘
that — may nor can.‘

»nû is her doch ein edel man.«
»now is he yet a noble man.«

‚frowe, swie edel sô her sî,
‚lady, however noble so he be,

mîn herze is sîner minne frî
my heart is of-his love free

und immer mêre wesen sal,
and ever more be shall,

al gâber mir die werlt al.‘
all gave-he to-me the world all.‘

Aber sprach diu kuneginne
Again spoke the queen

»dir ne wirret niwan minne,
»thee not ails except love,

swie ungerne duz enbarest,
however unwillingly thou-it revealest,

und swie dû lougenende varest,
and however thou denying farest,

dû minnest einen man iedoch.«
thou lovest a man yet.«

‚desn gihe ich, frouwe, niht noch.‘
‚that avow I, lady, not yet.‘

»al wil dus niemer gejehen,
»all wilt thou-it never avow,

sô kan ichz doch wole ersehen
so can I-it yet well see

(sprach si), liebiu tohter mîn;
(spoke she), dear daughter mine;

lâ daz lougenen sîn,
let the denying be,

dû verlûsest al dîn arbeit.
thou losest all thy toil.

sage mir die wârheit,
tell me the truth,

sô tûstû rehter unde baz.»
so doest-thou more-rightly and better

‚frouwe, sprechet irz umbe daz„
‚lady, speak you-it about that,

daz ich sus ubele bin gevar?‘
that I thus ill am colored?‘

»dar an werde ich es gewar
»there on become I of-it aware

und ouch an andern dingen.
and also in other things.

dune darft ez niht lengen,
thou needest it not lengthen,

sagez alse dû doch mûst.
tell-it as thou yet must.

ich weiz war umbe duz tûst,
I know where fore thou-it doest,

ez nimet dich michel hâle.«
it takes thee great concealment.«

‚is ez denne solîch quâle,
‚is it then such torment,

daz ir dâ heizet minne?‘
which you there call love?‘

dô sprach diu kuneginne
then spoke the queen

»jâ ez, weiz got, tohter mîn.«
»yea it, knows God, daughter mine.«

‚frowe, sô mach ez vil wol sîn‘
‚lady, so may it very well be‘

sprach diu junkfrouwe wider
spoke the young-lady back

und sach vil trûrechlîche nider.
and looked very sorrowfully down.

‚mîn herze is mir gebunden
‚my heart is to-me bound

(sprach si) in korzen stunden,
(spoke she) in short hours,

daz ê was ledechlîche frî:
which ere was freely free:

ichn weiz ob ez von minnen sî.‘
I-not know if it from love be.‘

»tohter, ich bin es vil gewis.
»daughter, I am of-it very certain.

nû sage mir rehte wie dir is:
now tell me rightly how to-thee is:

stêt dir z’ieman dîn mût?«
stands to-thee to-anyone thy spirit?«

‚weiz got, frouwe, jâ ez tût
‚knows God, lady, yea it does

(sprach si mit grôzen sorgen):
(spoke she with great cares):

jâ sint gester morgen,
yea since yesterday morning,

daz ich einen man gesach,
that I a man saw,

des ich vergezzen niene mach
of-whom I forget not-at-all may

noch nimmer mêre enkan.‘
nor ever more can.‘

»tohter, nû nenne mir den man.«
»daughter, now name to-me the man.«

‚weiz got, frowe, ichn getorste.‘
‚knows God, lady, I-not dared.‘

»sone is ez niht der vorste,
»so is it not the prince,

Turnûs, dar ich dir zû riet?«
Turnus, whom I to-thee to counseled?«

‚nein, frowe, hern is ez niet.‘
‚no, lady, he is it not.‘

»nû sage mir, frowe, wer ez sî.«
»now tell me, lady, who it be.«

,ich tâte gerne, wan ôwî
,I would-do gladly, but alas

daz ich mir vorhte und ich mich schame.‘
that I me fear and I me am-ashamed.‘

»tohter, nû scrîb mir sînen namen
»daughter, now write to-me his name

unde lâz mich in lesen.»
and let me it read

,frouwe, ez mûz doch alsô wesen‘
,lady, it must yet so be‘

sprach diu maget lussam.
spoke the maiden lovely.

ir tavelen sie nam
her tablet she took

und einen griffel von golde,
and a stylus of gold,

dar an si scrîben wolde.
there on she write would.

Mit angesten plânete sie daz was
With fears smoothed she the wax

und solde scrîben Ênêas,
and should write Aeneas,

dô ir ir mûder urloub gab.
when to-her her mother leave gave.

E was der êrste bûchstab,
E was the first letter,

dar nâch N und aber Ê.
there after N and again E.

diu angest tete ir vile wê.
the fear did to-her very woe.

dar nâch screib si A unde S.
there after wrote she A and S.

do bereite sich diu mûder des
then made-ready herself the mother of-it

und sprach dô si in gelas
and spoke when she it read

»hie stêt Ênêas!« 10630
»here stands Aeneas!«

‚jâ, vil liebe mûder mîn.'
‚yea, very dear mother mine.'

»des mûzest dû unsâlich sîn
»of-that must thou unblessed be

(sprach diu kuneginne),
(spoke the queen),

daz dû dîne minne
that thou thy love

an den man kêrest, 10635
to the man turnest,

dâ du dich mite entêrest
where thou thee with dishonorest

und allez dîn geslehte!
and all thy lineage!

want dû ne weist niht rehte,
for thou — knowest not rightly,

wie ez umbe den zagen stêt,
how it about the coward stands,

waz mâres von ime gêt 10640
what tidings of him goes

wîten after lande.
widely through land.

diu werlt hât sîn schande,
the world has his disgrace,

her is ein sô unreine man,
he is a so unclean man,

daz ich im dîn niene gan,
that I to-him of-thee not-at-all grant,

wandern hât niht gûten lîb,
for-he has not good body,

her geminnete nie wîb.
he loved never woman.

ezn is ze sagenne niht gût,
it is to tell not good,

waz her mit den mannen tût,
what he with the men does,

daz her der wîbe niene gert.
that he of-the women not-at-all desires.

dû wârest ubele zime gewert,
thou wert ill to-him granted,

wander nie wîb lieb gewan.
for-he never woman dear won.

phlâgen alle die man
should-keep all the men

des bôsen sides des her phliget,
the evil custom which he keeps,

den her vil unhôhe wiget
which he very lightly weighs

der unsâlege Troiân,
the unblessed Trojan,

diu werlt mûste schier zergân
the world must soon pass-away

inner hundert jâren,
within hundred years,

daz sage ich dir ze wâren:
that tell I to-thee for true:

daz schadete vile sêre,
that would-harm very sorely,

sone worde nimmer mêre
so would-become never more

an wîbe kint gewunnen.
by woman child won.

wie mohte ich im dîn gunnen?
how might I to-him thee grant?

ich gunde dir des tôdes baz.
I would-grant to-thee the death rather.

nû hâstû wol vernomen daz,
now hast-thou well heard that,

wie unrehten lôn
how wrong reward

her gab der frouwen Dîdôn,
he gave to-the lady Dido,

diu ime gût und êre bôt:
who to-him goods and honor offered:

sie beleib dorch in tôt.
she remained for him dead.

von ime quam nie wîbe gût,
from him came never to-women good,

tohter, noch ouch dir ne tût.
daughter, nor also to-thee — does.

her is aller tugende âne scholt.
he is of-all virtues without by-guilt.

daz du im ie worde sô holt,
that thou to-him ever becamest so devoted,

daz sî dem hôhsten gote geklaget.«
that be to-the highest god lamented.«

‚nune weiz ich, frouwe' sprach diu maget,
‚now-not know I, lady' spoke the maiden,

wes der hêre engildet,
of-what the lord pays,

wan in nieman mêre schildet.
for him no-one more reviles.

her is ein vorste wol gezogen,
he is a prince well bred,

swie her wider ûch sî belogen,
however he against you be belied,

her is ein edele Troiân
he is a noble Trojan

und vil reinlîche getân,
and very purely made,

sô man in rehte besiht.
as one him rightly beholds.

hern glîchet bôsem manne niht.
he resembles evil man not.

her is von den goten geborn,
he is from the gods born,

swie ir in dorch ûwern zorn
however you him for your wrath

scheldet alsus sêre
revile thus sorely

und sprechet im an sîn êre:
and speak to-him on his honor:

daz mohtet ir wol lâzen,‘
that might you well leave,‘

»des mûze dich got verwâzen!
»for-that must thee God curse!

(sprach diu kuneginne),
(spoke the queen),

dich betriegent sîne minne,
thee deceive his love,

daz her dich dunket schône.
that he to-thee seems fair.

daz dich got gehône!
that thee God shame!

wie getorstestû in ie geloben?
how daredst-thou him ever praise?

nû dû als frû woldest toben
now thou so early wouldst rave

unde denken umbe man,
and think about men,

wan minnetestû Turnûm dan,
why-not lovedst-thou Turnus then,

der dich minnet manegen tach?«
who thee loves many-a day?«

‚frouwe' sprach si ‚ich ne mach,
‚lady' spoke she ‚I not may,

ich bin ze verre drane komen,
I am too far thereon come,

sîn minne hât mir benomen
his love has from-me taken

mîn herze unde mînen sin.
my heart and my sense.

mir is leit deich ime sô holt bin,
to-me is grievous that-I to-him so devoted am,

des mûz ich sîn unfrô.
of-that must I be unglad.

der minnen got Cupidô
the love's god Cupid

der is Ênêases brûder
he is Aeneas's brother

und is Vênûs sîn mûder,
and is Venus his mother,

diu gewaldege gotinne:
the mighty goddess:

die hânt mir sîne minne
they have to-me his love

in mîn herze sô getân,
into my heart so done,

deich ir niht abe mach gestân.'
that-I from-it not off may stand.'

The Letter on the Arrow

XLVI

The queen leaves in anger. Alone, Lavinia decides to write to Aeneas: she writes in Latin that she loves him above all men, wraps the letter around an arrow under the feathers, and when Aeneas rides by at midday she asks a young kinsman with a bow to shoot it near the Trojans, as if to drive away spies.

Dô diu mûder daz vernam,
When the mother that heard,

ir tohter wart si vile gram
to-her daughter became she very hostile

als sie vil wol bescheinde.
as she very well showed.

Lavîne sêre weinde,
Lavinia sorely wept,

wand sir drowete unde schalt.
for she-her threatened and reviled.

diu maget quam in ir ungewalt.
the maiden came into her powerlessness.

in unmaht sie si ligen liez,
in swoon she her lie let,

leides sie ir vil gehiez,
of-sorrow she to-her much promised,

in zorne sie danne streich.
in wrath she thence went.

dâ bleib si varlôs unde bleich
there remained she colorless and pale

diu junkfrouwe lussam,
the young-lady lovely,

unz ir daz herze wider quam.
until to-her the heart back came.

dô rihte si sich ûf und sprach
then raised she herself up and spoke

,ôwî minne und ungemach,
,alas love and discomfort,

wie ungenâdich ir mir sît!
how ungracious you to-me are!

nû wâres mêr danne zît,
now were-it more than time,

daz ir mich liezet genesen,
that you me let recover,

ob ez iemer sal wesen,
if it ever shall be,

sô mohtet irs beginnen,
so might you-it begin,

wand mîn herze is innen
for my heart is inside

alze unmâzen heiz
all-too beyond-measure hot

umb einen man, ders niht ne weiz
for a man, who-of-it not — knows

noch mir nie minne zû gewûch.
nor to-me never love to mentioned.

daz is doch wunderlîch genûch,
that is yet wondrous enough,

deich des niht abe mach gestân.
that-I of-it not off may stand.

wie sal ichz nû ane vân,
how shall I-it now on undertake,

daz ichs in innen bringe
that I-of-it him aware bring

mit gefûchlîchem dinge
with fitting thing

und ich in des mache gewis,
and I him of-that make certain,

daz im mîn herze holt is
that to-him my heart devoted is

sô harde ûzermâzen?
so very beyond-measure?

dazn touch mir niht gelâzen,
that avails me not let-be,

swie sô ich ez erwerbe.
however so I it win.

ez is bezzer dan ich verderbe,
it is better than I perish,

wandich schiere sterben mûz,
for-I quickly die must,

mir ne werde der hitze bûz.
to-me unless become of-the heat amends.

ich weiz ouch wol, nehein nôt
I know also well, no distress

is arger danne der tôt.
is worse than the death.

swie sô mir sî iedoch,
however so to-me be yet,

ich sterbe ungerne noch,
I die unwillingly still,

die wîle ich mach lebendech blîben.
the while I may living remain.

ich mûz, wâne ich, scrîben
I must, ween I, write

gefûchlîche an einen brief
fittingly on a letter

daz grôze leit âne lief,
the great sorrow without joy,

des ich mich mûz genieten,
of-which I myself must partake,

und wil im enbieten,
and will to-him send-word,

wie wê mir sîn minne tût.
how woe to-me his love does.

hât her dan manlîchen mût,
(if)-has he then manly spirit,

her sal mir deste holder sîn,
he shall to-me the more-devoted be,

swenner weiz den willen mîn.
when-he knows the will mine.

dar umbe enbiete ich ime daz.
there about send-word I to-him that.

her sal ouch vehten deste baz,
he shall also fight the better,

sô daz her Turnûm erslât,
so that he Turnus slays,

swanne sô her in bestât,
whenever so he him attacks,

daz her sich sîn niemer erwert,
that he himself of-him never defends,

ob her mîn iemêr gegert.
if he of-me ever desires.

dar umbe is her mir iemer holt,
there about is he to-me ever devoted,

is her des ubiles âne scholt,
(if)-is he of-the evil without guilt,

des in mîn mûder hât gezigen.
of-which him my mother has accused.

ôwî wan hete ich diz verswigen!
alas oh-that had I this kept-silent!

(sprach diu maget lussam)
(spoke the maiden lovely)

daz ez mir ie in den mût quam,
that it to-me ever into the spirit came,

des sal ich iemer rouwich sîn.
of-that shall I ever rueful be.

jâ zêch in des diu mûder mîn
yea accused him of-it the mother mine

niwan dorch die scholde,
except for the cause,

daz si mir in leiden wolde.
that she to-me him make-loath would.

sie verliesent alle ir arbeit,
they lose all their hardship,

man weiz des wol die wârheit,
one knows of-it well the truth,

daz der hêre Ênêas
that the lord Aeneas

ie vil unscholdich was
ever very guiltless was

umbe solhe missetât:
about such misdeed:

got verwâze bôsen rât!‘
God curse evil counsel!‘

Dô was diu maget reine
Then was the maiden pure

in der kemenâten aleine.
in the chamber alone.

ir angest diu was vile grôz.
her fear it was very great.

die ture si innen beslôz.
the door she inside locked.

dô nam des rîchen kuneges kint
then took the rich king's child

tinten unde permint,
ink and parchment,

als si diu nôt dar zû treib.
as her the need there to drove.

welt ir nû hôren waz si screib
will you now hear what she wrote

in scônem lâtîne?
in beautiful Latin?

‚ez enbûtet Lavîne
‚it sends-word Lavinia

Ênêase dem rîchen
to-Aeneas the rich

ir dienest innechlîchen,
her service inwardly,

der is ir vor alle man,
who is to-her before all men,

wande sim baz gûtes gan,
for she-to-him better of-good grants,

dan allen den dies ie gesach,
than all those who-she ever saw,

und si sîn vergezzen niene mach
and she him forget not-at-all may

weder spâte noch frû.
neither late nor early.

unde enbûtet im dar zû,
and sends-word to-him there to,

daz her der rede sî gewis
that he of-the speech be certain

und vil wol gedenke des,
and very well think of-it,

daz diu minne vil getût.‘
that the love much does.‘

alsô dûhtez sie gût.
so seemed-it her good.

dô siz gescreib und uberlas
when she-it wrote and over-read

und der brief trocken was,
and the letter dry was,

gefûchlîche sie in vielt.
fittingly she it folded.

wîslîche si in behielt,
wisely she it kept,

des nam si michel hâle.
of-that took she great concealment.

si erwarb eine strâle,
she got an arrow,

ich ne weiz wâ sie si nam
I not know where she it took

diu junkfrouwe lussam.
the young-lady lovely.

daz gevidere si abe bant,
the feathers she off bound,

den brief si umb den zein want,
the letter she about the shaft wound,

daz lêrde sie diu Minne.
that taught her the Love.

die scrift kêrdes enbinne
the writing turned-she inside

unde bant dô die veder
and bound then the feather

sô gefûchlîche weder,
so fittingly back,

daz daz nieman ne sach,
that it no-one — saw,

daz der brief drunder lach.
that the letter there-under lay.

Nû hôret wie siz ane vienk.
Now hear how she-it on began.

zû dem venster sie gienk:
to the window she went:

dô was ez wol mitter tach.
then was it well mid day.

lieblîche sie dâ hine sach,
lovingly she there thither looked,

dâ ir daz herze was.
where her the heart was.

dô quam aber Ênêas
then came again Aeneas

mit sînen gesellen dar geriten,
with his companions thither ridden,

des si vil kûme hete erbiten
which she very scarcely had awaited

diu junkfrouwe lussam.
the young-lady lovely.

dô si gesach daz her quam,
when she saw that he came,

des wart ir herze vil frô
of-that became her heart very glad

unde hûb sich vile hô
and raised itself very high

ir gehuge unde ir mût,
her joy and her spirit,

alsô noch vil maneger tût,
as still very many-a-one does,

diu ir herzelieb gesiht.
who her heart's-dear sees.

von diu ne wundert mich des niht,
from that — wonders me of-it not,

daz sie frô was dô sin gesach.
that she glad was when she-him saw.

niht langer sie dô lach,
no longer she then lay,

frôlîche sie sprank
joyfully she sprang

von dem venster ûf den bank.
from the window onto the bench.

schiere enslôz sie die ture
quickly unlocked she the door

und sach in den hof hin fure,
and looked into the court thither forth,

diu junkfrouwe wol getân,
the young-lady well made,

einen junkhêren stân,
a young-lord stand,

einen bogen heter in der hant.
a bow had-he in the hand.

si lobetes got daz sie in vant.
she praised-for-it God that she him found.

her was ir vater mâch.
he was her father's kinsman.

si winkte im dô si in gesach.
she beckoned to-him when she him saw.

dô des der hêre wart geware,
when of-that the lord became aware,

vil schiere lief her dare
very quickly ran he thither

unde alser zû zir quam,
and as-he to her came,

dô sprach diu maget lussam
then spoke the maiden lovely

‚nû tû dorch den willen mîn,
‚now do for the will mine,

des ich dir immer holt wil sîn
of-which I to-thee ever devoted will be

al die wîle daz ich leve,
all the while that I live,

lieber frunt schôner neve,
dear friend beautiful cousin,

schûz die strâle hin abe
shoot the arrow thither down

wider die dâ haldent in dem graben
against those-who there halt in the ditch

bî der mûre vile nâ.
by the wall very near.

si habent hût wol lange dâ,
they have today well long there,

daz is mir leit unde zorn,
that is to-me grievous and wrath,

wande siez ouch hie bevorn
for they-it also here before

al dise wochen tâten.
all this week did.

ich vorhte sie verrâten
I fear they betray

mînem vater al sîn êre.
to-my father all his honor.

des vorhte ich vile sêre,
of-that fear I very sorely,

wande sie die borch besehent
for they the castle view

unde wartent unde spehent,
and watch and spy,

wâ diu borch sî sô getân,
where the castle be so made,

daz man ze storme moge gân,
that one to assault may go,

swenne der fride ûz gêt.
whenever the peace out goes.

ich vorhte, wandez alsô stêt,
I fear, for-it so stands,

daz wirs betrogen belîben.
that we-of-it deceived remain.

mahtû si hinnen trîben,
(if)-mayest-thou them hence drive,

des weiz ich dir iemer dank,
of-that know I to-thee ever thanks,

wandir gesprâche is al ze lank.‘
for-their talk is all too long.‘

Aeneas Struck by Love

XLVII

The kinsman fears breaking the truce but shoots the arrow as Lavinia asks. Aeneas reads the letter, says nothing, and bows to her at the window; a knight mocks him for lingering by the tower. As he looks at her, Amor shoots him with the golden spear. At supper he cannot eat, and in bed he thinks of her and burns, at first taking it for fever. He reproaches Amor, Cupid, and Venus, his own kin, fears for the coming combat, and marvels at love's power over him.

Dô sprach der edele jungelink
Then spoke the noble youngling

,diz is ein angestlîch dink,
,this is a fearful thing,

junkfrouwe, des ir geret.
young-lady, which you desire.

mich dunket gût daz irs enberet,
me seems good that you-it forgo,

want der fride is sô gesworen,
for the peace is so sworn,

daz nieman is sô wol geboren,
that no-one is so well born,

der in hete zebrochen,
who it had broken,

ezn worde an ime gerochen,
it-not would-become on him avenged,

ob man ez befunde;
if one it found;

hern verlore sîn gesunde
he-not would-lose his health

unde solde kûme genesen.
and should scarcely recover.

ich tâtez gerne, mohtez wesen
I would-do-it gladly, might-it be

ân grôze sorge mîne.‘
without great care mine.‘

dô sprach aber Lavîne
then spoke again Lavinia

‚ezn komt dir nimmer zunstaden,
‚it comes to-thee never to-harm,

dû ne salt niemanne schaden,
thou — shalt to-no-one harm,

zû disen stunden
at these hours

salt dû deheinen wunden
shalt thou no wounds

der rosse noch der lûte,
of-the horses nor of-the people,

desn gebat ich dich hûte,
that-not bade I thee today,

dû maht wol schiezen dâ bî,
thou mayest well shoot there by,

daz ez dehein schade sî.
that it no harm be.

schûz hin dane verre,
shoot thither thence far,

daz ez nieman werre,
that it no-one harm,

niwan daz dû si scheides
except that thou them part

und in die habe geleides,
and to the haven lead,

dâ si dâ haldent al den tach,
where they there halt all the day,

wandez uns wol geschaden mach.
for-it us well harm may.

des nis doch nehein nôt.‘
of-that is yet no need.‘

dô tete her alse sime gebôt,
then did he as she-to-him commanded,

sîn angest was doch vile grôz.
his fear was yet very great.

die strâle her hin abe schôz,
the arrow he thither down shot,

als in diu junkfrouwe bat,
as him the young-lady asked,

vor die hêren an eine stat.
before the lords to a place.

Ênêas sach si vallen.
Aeneas saw it fall.

done was under in allen
then was among them all

nieman der wiste wannen si quam.
no-one who knew whence it came.

ein ritter die strâle nam
a knight the arrow took

und gab si Ênêase in die hant.
and gave it to-Aeneas into the hand.

den brief her dar ane vant,
the letter he there on found,

der under die vederen was geleget.
which under the feathers was laid.

des im sîn herze wart al beweget.
of-which to-him his heart became all moved.

den zein her enzwei brach,
the shaft he in-two broke,

ze sînen gesellen her sprach
to his companions he spoke

Ênêas der Troiân
Aeneas the Trojan

‚si hânt uns unrehte getân,
‚they have us wrongly done,

die den fride an uns brechen.
who the peace on us break.

nû mach ich wole sprechen,
now may I well speak,

daz siz an mir beginnen.‘
that they-it on me begin.‘

do begonder sich versinnen
then began-he himself bethink

unde sprach ‚ez wirt gût rât
and spoke ‚it becomes good counsel

umb sus getâne missetât.‘
for so done misdeed.‘

geswâslîche er abe nam
secretly he off took

den brief derm an dem zeine quam.
the letter which-to-him on the shaft came.

dô hern gesach unde gelas,
when he-it saw and read,

daz dar an gescriben was,
what there on written was,

dô wart her frô unde sweich.
then became he glad and was-silent.

der junkfrouwen her geneich,
to-the young-lady he bowed,

dâ si in dem venster lach.
where she in the window lay.

si frowete sich dô sin gesach
she rejoiced herself when she-him saw

unde neich im hin wider
and bowed to-him thither back

von dem venster hin nider.
from the window thither down.

her neich hin ûf und sie her abe.
he bowed thither up and she hither down.

dô reit her nâher zu dem graben
then rode he nearer to the ditch

und sach vil holtlîchen dar.
and looked very fondly thither.

des wart ein ritter gewar,
of-that became a knight aware,

der was ein spottâre,
he was a mocker,

swie her ein ritter wâre,
however he a knight were,

her sprach alsus dorch sînen spot
he spoke thus for his mockery

‚waz tût mîn hêre, dorch got?
‚what does my lord, for God?

war umbe habet her dâ
where fore halts he there

bî dem turne sô nâ?
by the tower so near?

ez is ân den rât mîn,
it is without the counsel mine,

ich wil es âne scholt sîn,
I will of-it without guilt be,

ob her des missenûzet,
if he of-it misprofits,

daz man in dâ schûzet,
that one him there shoots,

als ez vil nâ komen was.‘
as it very nearly come was.‘

dô winkete ime Ênêas
then beckoned to-him Aeneas

und hiez in swîgen stille,
and bade him be-silent still,

wander sînen willen
for-he his will

und sînen side erkande.
and his manner knew.

schiere ern dannen sande
quickly he-him thence sent

und bevalch im eine boteschaft.
and charged him a message.

dâ hûb sich diu fruntschaft
there raised itself the friendship

allerêrest under in zwein,
first-of-all between them two,

als sint an in beiden schein.
as afterward on them both shone.

Dô frowete sich Ênêas,
Then rejoiced himself Aeneas,

wand im sîn herze erlûhtet was,
for to-him his heart lit was,

daz im diu frowede machte lieht.
which to-him the joy made bright.

ie doch ne rûmde her sich nieht,
ever yet — boasted he himself not,

die grôzen froude her versweich.
the great joy he kept-silent.

der junkfrouwen her geneich:
to-the young-lady he bowed:

vil harde sanfte tete ir daz
very very gently did to-her that

und ime was ouch deste baz.
and to-him was also the better.

frôlîche sprach der Troiân
joyfully spoke the Trojan

‚disiu borch is hie baz getân,
‚this castle is here better made,

10975 danne si anderswâ sî.‘
than it elsewhere be.‘

her reit dem venster nâher bî,
he rode to-the window nearer by,

da diu junkfrouwe inne lach.
where the young-lady in lay.

ir antluze her besach,
her face he beheld,

daz alsô minnechlîch was.
which so lovely was.

10980 dô markte Ênêas
then marked Aeneas

ir ougen unde ir munt:
her eyes and her mouth:

dô schôz in Amôr sâ ze stunt
then shot him Amor at-once at hour

mit dem goldînen gêre
with the golden spear

eine wunden sêre
a wound sore

10985 und Vênûs diu mûder sîn
and Venus the mother his

geschûf daz im daz magedîn
brought-about that to-him the maiden

lieb wart als sîn eigen lîb,
dear became as his own body,

daz im nie weder maget noch wîb
that to-him never neither maiden nor woman

dâ vor nie sô lieb ne wart,
there before never so dear — became,

daz geliebete im die vart.
that endeared to-him the journey.

Dô hielt der helt edele
Then halted the hero noble

unz diu sunne gienk ze sedele
until the sun went to seat

und al die sîne bedrôz,
and all the his-own wearied,

sint daz in Amôr geschôz
since that him Amor shot

und her die wunden gewan.
and he the wound won.

ie doch geschûfen sîne man,
ever yet brought-about his men,

daz her ze herbergen reit
that he to lodgings rode

und vant sîn ezzen al gereit.
and found his food all ready.

do her dar zû was gesezzen,
when he there to was seated,

done mohter niht ezzen,
then might-he not eat,

weder ezzen noch trinken.
neither eat nor drink.

dô her begonde denken
when he began think

an den sanfte tûnden brief,
of the gently doing letter,

daz denken wart im sô lief,
the thinking became to-him so dear,

daz her des ezzennes vergaz,
that he of-the eating forgot.

mit grôzer froude er aber saz,
with great joy he but sat,

wand im geliebet was sîn leben.
for to-him endeared was his life.

her hiez in allen gnûch geben,
he bade to-them all enough give,

die dâ vor im sâzen.
who there before him sat.

si trunken unde âzen
they drank and ate

als vil sô sis wolden.
as much as they-it would.

diez dâ geben solden,
who-it there give should,

die gâbenz willechlîche.
they gave-it willingly.

Ênêas der rîche
Aeneas the rich

her enaz noch entrank.
he ate nor drank.

diu wîle dûhte in vile lank,
the while seemed to-him very long,

want der helt mâre
for the hero famous

gerne ze bette wâre.
gladly to bed were.

Dô man die tische abe genam
When one the tables off took

und er ze sînem bette quam
and he to his bed came

unde her dar ane lach,
and he there on lay,

neheines slâfes her ne phlach,
no sleep he — kept,

hern mohte noch enkonde.
he might nor could.

do her denken begonde
when he to-think began

mit allen sinnen sînen
with all senses his

umb die schônen Lavînen,
about the fair Lavinia,

wie rehte minnechlîch sie was,
how right lovely she was,

und umb den brief den her las
and about the letter which he read

und waz im dar an was enboten:
and what to-him there on was sent-word:

do begonder heizen unde rôten.
then began-he heat and redden.

von minnen erhitzete im sîn blût
from love heated to-him his blood

und verwandelte im sîn mût.
and changed to-him his spirit.

dô wânde der helt vile mâre,
then weened the hero very famous,

daz ez ein ander wêwe wâre,
that it an other woe were,

suht oder fieber oder ride:
sickness or fever or ague:

hern bekande niht der minnen side.
he knew not of-the love's manner.

des was her ein unfrô man,
of-that was he an unglad man,

unze daz her sich versan,
until that he himself bethought,

daz ez diu starke minne was.
that it the strong love was.

do erzornde sich Ênêas,
then grew-angry himself Aeneas,

daz im war daz ungemach;
that to-him was that discomfort;

in zorne er zime selben sprach
in wrath he to-him self spoke

‚waz is diz oder waz sal ez sîn?
‚what is this or what shall it be?

wer hât daz herze mîn
who has the heart mine

und mîne manheit mir benomen?
and my manhood from-me taken?

war is mîn wîsheit komen?
where is my wisdom come?

waz bedarf ich dirre minnen?
what need I of-this love?

sal ich des nû beginnen,
shall I of-it now begin,

des ich nie mêr begân?
which I never more began?

nû was ich doch hie vore ein man,
now was I yet here before a man,

der herze hete unde sin.
who heart had and sense.

daz ich nû sus vertôret bin,
that I now thus befooled am,

daz is mir an mich selben zoren.
that is to-me on me self anger.

ich dahtes lutzel hie bevoren
I thought-of-it little here before

do ez mir doch zîteger wâre‘ 11055
when it to-me yet more-timely were‘

sprach der helt mâre.
spoke the hero famous.

Aber sprach der Troiân
Again spoke the Trojan

‚sal mir diz ungmach niht vergân,
‚shall to-me this discomfort not pass,

des mûz ich wol sîn unfrô.
of-that must I well be unglad.

Amôr unde Cupidô, 11060
Amor and Cupid,

die mîne brûder solden sîn,
who my brothers should be,

und Venûs diu mûder mîn,
and Venus the mother mine,

von den ich dâ bin geboren,
from whom I there am born,

si bescheinent mir vil grôzen zoren.
they show to-me very great wrath.

ichn weiz wazs an mir rechen. 11065
I-not know what-they on me avenge.

ich mach wole sprechen,
I may well speak,

daz ich des nie mêr began.
that I of-it never more began.

wâr ich der fromediste man,
were I the most-valiant man,

der ie gewan den lîb,
who ever won the body,

oder daz blôdiste wîb, 11070
or the most-timid woman,

die ie mûder getrûch,
whom ever mother bore,

sô tâten sie mir leides genûch,
so did they to-me of-sorrow enough,

daz mir nimmer wirs moht wesen,
that to-me never worse might be,

wandich ne mach doch niht genesen,
for-I — may yet not recover,

es ne werde mir schiere bûz,
it unless become to-me quickly amends.

nû nâhet daz ich vehten mûz
now nears that I fight must

wider den kûnen Turnûm,
against the bold Turnus,

daz ich gerne wil tûn
which I gladly will do

und vil genendechlîche
and very boldly

umb daz kunechrîche
for the kingdom

und umb diz schône magedîn.
and for this fair maiden.

ob al diu werlt wâre mîn,
if all the world were mine,

sone gewunne ich nimmer ander wîb.
so would-win I never other woman.

diz ungemach sal mir den lîb
this discomfort shall to-me the body

schiere krank machen,
quickly sick make,

sal ich vasten und wachen
shall I fast and wake

beidiu naht unde tach;
both night and day;

want nieman wol leben mach
for no-one well live may

ân ezzen und ân slâfen.
without eating and without sleeping.

nû solde ich mîniu wâfen
now should I my weapons

ze kampfe bereiten.
for combat prepare.

sal ich nû arbeiten
shall I now toil

beidiu tach unde naht,
both day and night,

daz benimt mir schier die maht
that takes from-me soon the might

und den lîb und die êre,
and the body and the honor,

daz vorhte ich vile sêre.‘
that feared I very sorely.‘

Enêas sprach aber mê
Aeneas spoke again more

‚Minne, ir tût mir al ze wê,
‚Love, you do to-me all too woe,

wan daz ir sîn niht welt enberen.
but that you of-it not will forgo.

Minne, sal ez lange weren,
Love, shall it long last,

sô mûz ez mir anz leben gân.
so must it to-me to-the life go.

Minne, waz hân ich û getan,
Love, what have I to-you done,

daz ir mich quelt sô sêre?
that you me torment so sorely?

Minne, nemet ir mir mîn êre,
Love, take you from-me my honor,

war zû sal mir dan der lîb?
what to shall to-me then the body?

Minne, jan bin ich doch niht ein wîb,
Love, yea am I yet not a woman,

holfez mich iht, ich bin ein man.
helped-it me anything, I am a man.

Minne, al daz ich mach und kan,
Love, all that I may and can,

daz hilfet wider ûch niht ein hâr.
that helps against you not a hair.

Minne, ûr burde is mir ze swâr,
Love, your burden is to-me too heavy,

ichn mach si langer niht getragen.
I may it longer not bear.

Minne, ichn getar von û niht klagen,
Love, I dare of you not lament,

swie unsanfte so ir mir tût.
however ungently so you to-me do.

Minne, nû trôstet mir den mût
Love, now comfort for-me the spirit

schiere, des is mir nôt,
quickly, of-that is to-me need,

Minne, waz holfe ûch mîn tôt?‘
Love, what helped you my death?‘

Aber sprach Ênêas
Again spoke Aeneas

‚wie seltsâne mir diz was
‚how strange to-me this was

hie bevor al mînen lîb,
here before all my life,

wande mir nie maget noch wîb
for to-me never maiden nor woman

sus unmâzlîchen lieb ne wart.
so beyond-measure dear — became.

ez was ein unsâlich vart,
it was an unblessed journey,

deich ze Laurente banechen reit,
that-I to Laurentum for-pleasure rode,

dâ von mir disiu grôze arbeit
there from to-me this great hardship

komen is und diz ungemach.
come is and this discomfort.

daz man ie von Minnen sprach,
that one ever of Love spoke,

wie gewaldech sie wâre,
how mighty she were,

daz was mir vil ummâre,
that was to-me very indifferent,

dar ûf enahte ich niht ein bast.
there upon heeded I not a bast.

ich wânde mîn herze wâr sô vast
I weened my heart were so firmly

gesigelet mit solhem sinne,
sealed with such sense,

daz sô unmâzlîche minne
that so beyond-measure love

niemer mohte komen dar in.
never might come there in.

nû is verwandelet mîn sin
now is changed my sense

und unsanft verkêret.
and ungently turned.

sie hât mich gelêret
she has me taught

in vile korzer stunt,
in very short hour,

daz mir ê was unkunt
what to-me ere was unknown

hie vor uber den dritten tach.
here before over the third day.

nû weiz ich wol waz sie tûn mach,
now know I well what she do may,

des ich wol innen worden bin;
of-which I well aware become am;

und hete ich tûsent manne sin
and had I thousand men's sense

und solde ich leben tûsent jâr,
and should I live thousand years,

sô weiz ich wol daz vor wâr,
so know I well that for true,

daz ich ne mohte ir wunder
that I not might her wonders

gezelen albesunder
count all-apart

von der Minne diu si tût,
of the Love which she does,

beidiu ubel unde gût.
both evil and good.

Aeneas's Night

XLVIII

Aeneas begs Love for mercy, regrets the letter, and recalls Dido, who died of a love he now understands. He fears Lavinia may be deceiving him and Turnus alike, then rejects the thought, and blesses the letter, the hand that wrote it, and Love: with Lavinia's love he fears neither Turnus nor all his men. At dawn he sleeps late, and his men worry that he is sick. Lavinia waits for him at her window.

Genâde (sprach her), Minne,
Grace (spoke he), Love,

sint daz ich des beginne, 11150
since that I of-it begin,

deich û sal dienen, Minne,
that-I to-you shall serve, Love,

so bedarf ich gûter sinne.
so need I good senses.

der helfet ir mir, Minne,
of-them help you me, Love,

ê danne ich gar verbrinne.
ere than I wholly burn-up.

waz hilfet û daz, Minne, 11155
what helps you that, Love,

daz ich sus smelze enbinne?
that I thus melt within?

genâdet ir mir, Minne,
show-grace you to-me, Love,

ê ich den schaden gewinne.
ere I the harm win.

getrôstet mich, Minne,
comfort me, Love,

starkiu kuneginne! 11160
strong queen!

bistû mîn mûder, Minne,
art-thou my mother, Love,

Vênûs, hêriu gotinne,
Venus, lordly goddess,

ob ich dîn sun bin, Minne,
if I thy son am, Love,

des brink mich schiere inne.‘
of-that bring me quickly aware.‘

Enêas dô aber sprach
Aeneas then again spoke

‚mir is diz freislîch ungemach
‚to-me is this terrible discomfort

vile gâhes ane komen,
very suddenly on come,

daz mir die rûwe hât benomen,
that from-me the rest has taken,

daz mir ê unkunt was.
which to-me ere unknown was.

want sint ich den brief gelas,
for since I the letter read,

der mir dorch minne wart gesant,
which to-me for love was sent,

und dâ ich ane gescriben vant
and where I on written found

daz Lavîne mir enbôt:
what Lavinia to-me sent-word:

wiste ich daz mir mîn nôt
knew I that to-me my distress

dar ane gehalden solde wesen,
there in kept should be,

ich ne hete in nie gelesen,
I — had it never read,

und daz ich arnen solde sus.
and that I pay should thus.

waz wîzet mir frou Vênûs
what blames me lady Venus

und Âmôr unde Cupidô?
and Amor and Cupid?

ich wiste wol daz frou Dîdô
I knew well that lady Dido

von minnen leit grôze nôt,
from love suffered great distress,

dô si ir selben tet den tôt.
when she to-her self did the death.

wâr mir dô zer selber stunt
were to-me then at-the same hour

zehen teil sô von minnen kunt,
ten parts so of love known,

als ich sider hân vernomen,
as I since have heard,

ichn wâre nie von ir komen.
I were never from her come.

Diu was mir (sprach her) vile holt,
She was to-me (spoke he) very devoted,

von diu hân ich sunde und scholt,
from that have I sin and guilt,

daz sie verlôs ir lîb.
that she lost her life.

waz wunders was daz umb ein wîb,
what of-wonder was that about a woman,

ob ir diu Minne nam den sin?
if from-her the Love took the sense?

und daz ich ein man bin
and that I a man am

und vil sterker solde wesen,
and very stronger should be,

ichn hân wan einen brief gelesen
I-not have but one letter read

und eine junkfrowen gesehen,
and one young-lady seen,

dâ von mir liebe sal geschehen,
there from to-me joy shall happen,

desne hân ich niht genoz̧z̧en,
of-that have I not profited,

wan daz̧ mich Âmôr hât geschoz̧z̧en
save that me Amor has shot

dorch daz̧ ouge in daz̧ herze mîn.
through the eye into the heart mine.

als an mir wol wirdet schîn,
as on me well becomes shown,

want mir wirs is tûsent stunt,
for to-me worse is thousand times,

dan ich mit wâfen wâre wunt,
than I with weapons were wounded,

mit swerden unde mit speren,
with swords and with spears,

daz̧ mich arzâte mohten neren,
that me physicians might heal,

mit geschoz̧z̧e und mit spiez̧en:
with shot and with javelins:

sô mohte ich des geniez̧en,
so might I of-it profit,

daz̧ mich arzâte bunden,
that me physicians bound,

die mich geheilen kunden,
who me heal could,

daz̧ manegem fromen man geschiht.
as to-many-a valiant man happens.

zû dirre wunden hôret niht
to this wound belongs not

salbe noch phlaster.
salve nor plaster.

mîn vînde soln mir laster
my enemies shall to-me reproach

und missewende sprechen,
and fault speak,

die sich welnt an mir rechen,
who themselves will on me avenge,

und sprechent daz ich sole verzagen.
and say that I shall despair.

des mûz ich von dem briefe klagen,
of-that must I of the letter lament,

daz her mir ie quam ze hant.
that it to-me ever came to hand.

wan hete ich in verbrant
if-only had I it burned

und mich an ime gerochen!
and myself on it avenged!

waz hân ich nû gesprochen?
what have I now spoken?

(sprach der Anchîses sun)
(spoke the Anchises's son)

waz mohte mir ein brief getûn,
what might to-me a letter do,

diu tinte und daz permint?
the ink and the parchment?

ich was nû tumber danne ein kint,
I was now more-foolish than a child,

daz ichs den brief hân gezigen,
that I-it the letter have accused,

daz mohte ich wole hân verswigen.‘
that might I well have kept-silent.‘

Der hêre an sînem bette lach.
The lord on his bed lay.

her sprach ‚hêre, wâ is der tach?'
he spoke ‚lord, where is the day?'

dô in des ligennes bedrôz,
when him of-the lying wearied,

wand sîn ungemach was grôz,
for his discomfort was great,

dô rihter sich ûf unde saz.
then raised-he himself up and sat.

her sprach ‚war umbe klage ich daz,
he spoke ‚where fore lament I that,

daz mir doch sô lieb was,
which to-me yet so dear was,

daz ich den sâlegen brief las
that I the blessed letter read

und Lavînen sach die maget,
and Lavinia saw the maiden,

diu mir daz leit hât geklaget,
who to-me the sorrow has lamented,

daz ir mîn minne tût?
that to-her my love does?

ne solde mir daz niht wesen gût,
— should to-me that not be good,

daz wâre ein michel unheil.
that were a great misfortune.

iedoch vorhte ich ein teil,
yet feared I a part,

diu wîb kunnen liste vil:
the women can tricks many:

waz ob si mich betriegen wil,
what if she me deceive will,

und den hêren Turnûm
and the lord Turnus

al daz selbe wil tûn
all the same will do

oder lîhte hât getân
or perhaps has done

(sus sprach der wîse Troiân)
(thus spoke the wise Trojan)

und tût daz dorch die scholde,
and does that for the cause,

daz si unser beider holde
that she of-us both favor

dâ mit erwerbe mit sinne,
there with win with sense,

sweder unser sie gewinne,
whichever of-us her win,

daz her si minne deste baz?
that he her love the better?

ôwî, war umbe sprach ich daz,
alas, where fore spoke I that,

sô rehte holt ich ir bin?
so right devoted I to-her am?

wannen quam mir der unnutze sin,
whence came to-me the useless sense,

der mir den zwîfel geriet?
which to-me the doubt counseled?

zwâre des ne trouwe ich niht
truly that — trust I not

daz si sus ze mir tû:
that she thus to me do:

sie is alze kint der zû
she is all-too child there to

und z'edele und ze wol getân.
and too-noble and too well made.

ich wil daz wizzen âne wân,
I will that know without doubt,

daz ez was der Minnen rât
that it was the Love's counsel

ân vals und âne missetât.
without falseness and without misdeed.

Zwâre (sprach Ênêas),
Truly (spoke Aeneas),

den selben brief den ich dâ las
the same letter which I there read

den tihte diu Minne.
it composed the Love.

hern moht von wîbes sinne
it might from woman's sense

niemer sô getihtet sîn.
never so composed be.

Lavînâ daz magedîn,
Lavinia the maiden,

diun getorstez niemer bestân,
she dared-it never undertake,

het ez diu Minne niht getân,
had it the Love not done,

daz si sie dar zû betwank.
that she her there to compelled.

mîn brûder Âmôr habe dank,
my brother Amor have thanks,

der der minnen hât gewalt,
who of-the love has power,

daz her si machete sô balt,
that he her made so bold,

daz si die kûnheit ie gewan.
that she the boldness ever won.

ich, der dâ solde sîn ein man
I, who there should be a man

an herzen unde an lîbe,
in heart and in body,

ichn kondes deheinem wîbe
I could-it to-no woman

nie sô wol gebieten.
never so well bid.

nû mûz ich mich genieten
now must I myself partake

angest unde sorgen
fear and cares

âbent unde morgen
evening and morning

beidiu naht unde tach,
both night and day,

unz daz ich erdenken mach
until that I devise may

mit allen sinnen mînen,
with all senses mine,

deich die schônen Lavînen
that-I the fair Lavinia

der rede innen bringe
of-the speech aware bring

mit ernesthaftem dinge,
with earnest thing,

wiez mir umbe ir minne stêt,
how-it to-me about her love stands,

diu mich sus unsanft ane gêt,
which me thus ungently at goes,

dar umbe ich lîde solhe nôt.
there about I suffer such distress.

daz si mir an ir briefe enbôt,
what she to-me in her letter sent-word,

ich weiz wol daz̧s mir niene louch.
I know well that-she to-me not-at-all lied.

swîch der rede, sie ne touch,
be-silent of-the speech, it not avails,

lâz̧ si betalle blîben,
let it wholly remain,

die man soln den wîben
the men shall to-the women

sus unmâz̧er minnen
so beyond-measure love

niht bringen innen,
not bring aware,

wand ez̧ ne wâre nie gût,
for it — were never good,

si worden alze hôch gemût
they would-become all-too high minded

und alze stolz wider die man.
and all-too proud toward the men.

der is wîse der sich bewaren kan,
he is wise who himself guard can,

swenne es ime nôt geschiht.
whenever of-it to-him need happens.

enbûte abr ich ir sîn niht,
sent-word but I to-her of-it not,

daz̧ sie niene weiz̧,
that she not-at-all knows,

wâ von ich bin kalt unde heiz̧,
where from I am cold and hot,

sô vorhte ich vile sêre,
so feared I very sorely,

daz si von mir kêre
that she from me turn

ir herze unde ir mût.
her heart and her spirit.

nein si weiz got noch entût.‘ 11310
no she knows God yet not-does.‘

Manlîche sprach Ênêas
Manfully spoke Aeneas

‚wol mich daz ich ie gelas
‚well me that I ever read

den brief der mir von ir quam,
the letter which to-me from her came,

und wol mich daz ich ie vernam,
and well me that I ever heard,

daz ich dar an gescriben vant, 11315
what I there on written found,

unde sâlîch sî diu hant,
and blessed be the hand,

diu in screib unde vielt,
which it wrote and folded,

diu in sneit unde behielt
which it cut and kept

und diu in umben zein want
and which it about-the shaft wound

und diu die vederen drûf bant 11320
and which the feathers thereon bound

mit scôneme sinne.
with beautiful sense.

sâlich sî diu Minne,
blessed be the Love,

diu tihte den brief und daz liet.
who composed the letter and the song.

ichn vorhte Turnûm nû niet
I feared Turnus now not

noch alle die sîne.
nor all the his-own.

sâlich sî Lavîne,
blessed be Lavinia,

diu mir die boteschaft enbôt.
who to-me the message sent-word.

bestêt mich Turnûs, deist sîn tôt,
attacks me Turnus, that-is his death,

ez wirt ein ungelîcher kamp
it becomes an unequal combat

als umben lewen und umbez lamp.
as about-the lion and about-the lamb.

des bereite ich in schiere.
of-that prepare I him quickly.

ob sîn wâren viere,
if of-him were four,

ich benâme in allen daz leben.
I would-take from-them all the life.

Lavîne hât mir gegeben
Lavinia has to-me given

kûnheit unde sin,
boldness and sense,

daz ich zehenstunt sterker bin
that I tenfold stronger am

und kûner danne ich ê was,
and bolder than I ere was,

sint daz ich den brief gelas.‘
since that I the letter read.‘

Do verstunt sich Ênêas,
Then understood himself Aeneas,

daz im ein teil gesenftet was
that to-him a part softened was

unde er rehte was bedaht.
and he rightly was minded.

dô was zergangen diu naht
then was passed the night

und was hôhe ûf der tach.
and was high up the day.

der hêre an sînem bette lach
the lord on his bed lay

und slief unz an den undern.
and slept until to the midmorning.

desn darf nieman wundern,
of-that needs no-one wonder,

der sîn kan genemen war,
who of-it can take heed,

wande her die naht gar
for he the night wholly

hete uberwachet.
had overwatched.

daz het diu Minne gemachet.
that had the Love made.

des slief deste vaster
therefore slept the faster

der helt âne laster.
the hero without reproach.

Nieman getorste in wecken.
No-one dared him wake.

des wâren sîne recken
of-that were his warriors

sumelîche vil unfrô
some very unglad

unde sprâchen ‚wie tût sô
and spoke ‚how does so

unser hêre Ênêas?
our lord Aeneas?

wie ungewon her des was,
how unwonted he of-that was,

daz her sliefe ze dirre zît!‘
that he slept at this time!“

sumelîche sprâchen dorch nît
some spoke for envy

‚wil her nû siech wesen,
‚will he now sick be,

sô mûz Turnûs wol genesen
so must Turnus well recover

und behalden diz rîche.‘
and keep this realm.‘

ouch vorhten sumelîche,
also feared some,

daz der helt mâre
that the hero famous

anders siech wâre,
otherwise sick were,

daz klageten die sîne.
that lamented the his-own.

dô was diu maget Lavîne
then was the maiden Lavinia

ûf gestanden vile frû,
up stood very early,

wand diu Minne twank si der zû,
for the Love forced her there to,

diu si mûte unz an den tach.
who her vexed until to the day.

in dem venster sie lach,
in the window she lay,

alsô sie gewone was.
as she wont was.

si warte, wanne Ênêas
she watched, when Aeneas

zû quâme geriten,
to would-come ridden,

des si unsanfte hete erbiten
which she ungently had awaited

mit grôzeme getwange.
with great constraint.

dô was her sô lange,
then was he so long,

daz es die junkfrowen bedrôz,
that it the young-lady wearied,

des was ir rouwe vile grôz.
of-that was her rue very great.

Lavinia's Doubt

XLIX

When Aeneas does not come, Lavinia fears he scorns her love, curses him and believes her mother's charge against him, then repents of her anger. Aeneas rides by at last on a mule; they bow to each other, and his men mock him for halting under the tower. He stays until dark, and they part unwillingly.

Si sprach mit grôzeme zorne
She spoke with great wrath

,ôwê ich bin diu verlorne,
,alas I am the lost-one,

wie frû ich unsâlich was!
how early I unblessed was!

waz wîzet mir her Ênêas?
what blames me sir Aeneas?

11385 wil her mich nû sus mîden?
will he me now thus avoid?

daz mach ich ubel erlîden,
that may I ill endure,

daz her nû niht rîtet here.
that he now not rides hither.

ich vorhte daz her niene gere
I fear that he not-at-all desires

der minnen der ich ime enbôt.
the love which I to-him sent-word.

11390 wâre ich danne dâ vor tôt
were I then there before dead

mit êren âne sunde,
with honors without sin,

ê ich sîn gewunne kunde,
ere I of-him won acquaintance,

son dorfte mich nieman klagen,
so needed me no-one lament,

wan diz ne mach ich niht verdagen.‘
but this — may I not keep-silent.‘

Aber sprach daz magedîn
Again spoke the maiden

,ich mûz wole unfrô sîn,
,I must well unglad be,

daz ich ie wart geboren,
that I ever was born,

sint ich mîn êre hân verloren
since I my honor have lost

und verlûse ich ouch den lîb dâ zû.
and lose I also the life there to.

dazn rûche aber ich ob ich tû,
that-not care but I if I do,

mir is der lîb ummâre,
to-me is the body indifferent,

sal ich offenbâre
shall I openly

missevarn hân wider den Troiân.
misfared have against the Trojan.

waz hân abr ich mit ime getân,
what have but I with him done,

wan daz ich im mîn minne enbôt?
save that I to-him my love sent-word?

des betwank mich vile grozîu nôt,
to-that forced me very great distress,

daz ich niht konde gedenken baz.
that I not could think better.

wil her mich hazzen umbe daz,
will he me hate for that,

daz ich im bin von herzen holt,
that I to-him am from heart devoted,

sô is ez der bôsheite scholt,
so is it of-the wickedness guilt,

der in dâ zêch diu mûder mîn.
of-which him there accused the mother mine.

moht ich sîn vîant denne sîn,
might I his enemy then be,

ich hazzete in vor alle man!
I would-hate him before all men!

ich enmach noch enkan
I may nor can

sîn vîant niet gewesen,
his enemy not be,

sal ich ouch nimmêr genesen.
shall I also never recover.

war umbe bin ich im aber holt,
where fore am I to-him but devoted,

sint her mich vêhet âne scholt
since he me hates without guilt

und verderbet mir den lîb?
and ruins for-me the body?

nun wart ich doch nie sîn wîb
now was I yet never his woman

noch her nie mîn man,
nor he never my man,

doch ich sîn niht vergezzen kan.‘
yet I him not forget can.‘

Dô Lavîne diu maget
When Lavinia the maiden

lange habete geklaget,
long had lamented,

daz ir herzen was wê,
that to-her heart was woe,

dô hûb sich mê unde mê
then raised itself more and more

ir ungemûte unde ir zoren.
her ill-humor and her wrath.

‚Ênêas wart mir geboren
‚Aeneas was to-me born

ze grôzem unheile.
to great misfortune.

nû mir daz was enteile,
now to-me that was allotted,

daz ich in minnen solde
that I him love should

und her mîn niene wolde,
and he me not-at-all would,

wie mach ich in gewinnen?
how may I him win?

sint her des wart innen
since he of-that became aware

der scône ubel Ênêas,
the fair evil Aeneas,

daz ich im sô holt was
that I to-him so devoted was

sô harde ûzer mâzen,
so very beyond measure,

sint hât her mich verlâzen,
since has he me left,

daz her mich niene wolde sehen.
that he me not-at-all would see.

als leide mûze ime geschehen,
as sorrow must to-him happen,

als mir von im geschehen is.
as to-me from him happened is.

deste baz getrouwe ich des,
the better trust I of-it,

daz im unmâre sîn diu wîb.
that to-him indifferent are the women.

sô hazze got sînen lîb,
so hate God his body,

daz ich sîn kunde ie gewan.
that I of-him acquaintance ever won.

waz tûfels minnet her an dem man?
what of-devil loves he in the man?

ez is ein michel bôsheit.
it is a great wickedness.

wiste ich des die wârheit,
knew I of-that the truth,

daz her des scholdich wâre,
that he of-that guilty were,

mir wâre vil unmâre
to-me were very indifferent

sîn schade und sîn schande.
his harm and his shame.

hern sal in diseme lande
he shall in this land

mit êren niemer blîben,
with honors never remain,

der vîant is den wîben.‘
he enemy is to-the women.‘

Aber sprach in ir zorne
Again spoke in her wrath

diu schône wol geborne
the fair well born

‚wie bin ich komen her zû?
‚how am I come hither to?

sô vorhte ich daz ich ubel tû,
so feared I that I ill do,

daz ich den hêren schelde.
that I the lord revile.

waz ob ichs noch engelde,
what if I-of-it yet pay,

ichn mach ez aber niht lâzen.
I may it but not let.

ich bin im ûzer mâzen
I am to-him out-of measure

beidiu holt unde gram.
both devoted and hostile.

daz her ie in diz lant quam,
that he ever into this land came,

daz im got geswîche!‘
that to-him God betray!‘

si schalt in freislîche,
she reviled him terribly,

als ir der grôze zorn geriet.
as to-her the great wrath counseled.

done weste aber sie niet,
then knew but she not,

dâz der hêre Ênêas
that the lord Aeneas

in solhen nôten dorch si was
in such distresses for her was

umbe ir edele minnen,
for her noble love,

diu mit sô scharphen sinnen
which with so sharp senses

vor si wider in vaht
for her against him fought

unde in dar zû hete braht,
and him there to had brought,

daz her an sînem bette lach
that he on his bed lay

wol unz an den mitten tach.
well until to the mid day.

her lach stille und schône
he lay still and fair

wol unz ûf die nône.
well until to the nones.

dô der tach wenden began,
when the day to-turn began,

dô wolde trôsten sîne man
then would comfort his men

Ênêas der wîgant.
Aeneas the warrior.

her hiez im geben sîn gewant,
he bade to-him give his clothing,

als ez ime wol gezam.
as it to-him well befitted.

dô her ez an sich genam,
when he it on himself took,

dô saz der scône Troiân
then sat the fair Trojan

ûf ein mûl wol getân
on a mule well made

mit ein teil sîner manne.
with a part of-his men.

her reit ouch banechen danne
he rode also for-pleasure thence

dâ hin dâ sîn herze was.
there thither where his heart was.

dô der hêre Ênêas
when the lord Aeneas

ze Laurente zû reit
to Laurentum to rode

uber daz velt vile breit
over the field very broad

her und die sîne,
he and the his-own,

do gesach in Lavîne
then saw him Lavinia

diu junkfrouwe lussam,
the young-lady lovely,

daz̧ her dar zû geriten quam.
that he there to ridden came.

dô wart sie vil unfrô,
then became she very unglad,

daz̧ si geredet hete sô,
that she spoken had so,

daz̧ si Ênêam den hêren schalt.
that she Aeneas the lord reviled.

ir herze wart ir vile kalt
her heart became to-her very cold

von rouwen und von leide:
from rue and from sorrow:

diu Minne twank si beide.
the Love forced her both.

si sprach mit grôz̧en rouwen
she spoke with great griefs

‚wer sal mir nû getrouwen
‚who shall to-me now trust

deheiner slahte gûtes,
of-no kind good,

sint ich sô lîhtes mûtes
since I so light of-mind

und alsô unstâte bin,
and so inconstant am,

daz̧ ich dorch mînen bôsen sin
that I through my evil sense

sus ubellîche hân getân?
so ill have done?

war umbe schalt ich den Troiân
where fore reviled I the Trojan

und sprach im an sîn êre?
and spoke to-him on his honor?

nû vorhte ich vile sêre,
now feared I very sorely,

her wizze allez daz ich sprach.
he know all that I spoke.

an ime ich rach
on him I avenged

niht wan daz hêr Ênêas
nothing but that sir Aeneas

ie biderbe unde gût was
ever worthy and good was

ân alle missewende
without all fault

und is unz an sîn ende
and is until to his end

mit manlîchem sinne.
with manly sense.

ich vorht daz im diu Minne
I feared that to-him the Love

al mîn rede habe gesaget.
all my speech have told.

jâ vorhte ich (sprach diu maget),
yea feared I (spoke the maiden),

daz her mir nimmer werde holt,
that he to-me never become devoted,

dar zû hât her rehte scholt.‘
there to has he right cause.‘

Aber sprach daz magedîn
Again spoke the maiden

‚unsâlich mûze der zorn sîn,
‚unblessed must the wrath be,

der mir den sin alsô benam,
which from-me the sense so took,

daz ich dem hêren wart gram
that I to-the lord became hostile

dem vil edelen Troiân.
to-the very noble Trojan.

ez mûz mir ubile ergân
it must to-me ill turn-out

dorch mîne unstâte.
for my inconstancy.

wie sanfte mir daz tâte,
how gently to-me that would-do,

mûste ichz ime gebûzen.
must I-it to-him atone.

mit mînen baren fûzen
with my bare feet

woldich ze sîme gezelde gân,
would-I to his tent go,

ne dûhtez nieman missetân
— would-seem-it to-no-one misdone

und hete ich mîn selber gewalt.
and had I of-my self power.

ezn worde nimmer sô kalt,
it would-become never so cold,

neweder îs noch snê,
neither ice nor snow,

daz mir daz ungmach tât sô wê,
that to-me the discomfort did so woe,

deiz mich der verte moht bekêren,
that-it me of-the journey might turn,

moht ichz anders tûn mit êren.‘
might I-it otherwise do with honors.‘

Sie sprach aber dô dar nâch
She spoke again then there after

‚mir is leider al ze gâch,
‚to-me is alas all too hasty,

des mûz ich sîn unfrô.
of-that must I be unglad.

wie hân ich nû geredet sô?
how have I now spoken so?

daz ich dar zime solde gân
that I there to-him should go

daz wâre unwîblîch getân
that were unwomanly done

und wâre laster, tâte ich daz.
and were reproach, did I that.

ich wil mich es bedenken baz„
I will myself of-it bethink better,

ê ich sô freislîche tû.‘
ere I so terribly do.‘

dô reit der hêre Ênêas zû,
then rode the lord Aeneas to,

her und die sîne.
he and the his-own.

do vergaz aber Lavîne
then forgot again Lavinia

des ir ê gemût was.
what to-her ere in-mind was.

dô geneich ir Ênêas
then bowed to-her Aeneas

der mâre und der rîche
the famous and the rich

und sach vil fruntlîche
and looked very friendly

gegen dem venster dâ si lach.
toward the window where she lay.

minnechlîch sin ane sach
lovingly she-him at looked

und geneich ime wider
and bowed to-him back

von dem venster hin nider.
from the window thither down.

sie sach here und her dar.
she looked hither and he thither.

des worden sîne man gewar,
of-that became his men aware,

die mit im dar quâmen.
who with him thither came.

ze spotte sie daz nâmen.
to mockery they that took.

lachende sprach ein Troiân,
laughing spoke a Trojan,

des hêren Ênêases man
the lord Aeneas's man

‚hêr, sal uns daz dunken gût,
‚lord, shall to-us that seem good,

sô sehet daz ir wole tût,
so see that you well do,

daz ir sô lange habet dâ
that you so long halt there

bî dem turne sô nâ.
by the tower so near.

moget ir rîten her abe
may you ride hither down

ein teil verrer von dem graben,
a part farther from the ditch,

des moget ir baz geniezen,
of-that may you better profit,

dan daz ir ûch lât schiezen
than that you yourselves let shoot

oder werfen von den zinnen.
or throw from the battlements.

dâr is etwer innen,
there is someone inside,

her sî junk oder alt,
he be young or old,

heter die borch in sîner gewalt,
had-he the castle in his power,

her gewunne ûch schiere drin,
he would-win you quickly therein,

mich ne triege mîn sin.‘
me unless deceive my sense.‘

Dô lachete hêr Ênêas
Then laughed sir Aeneas

und markte daz ez sîn spot was,
and marked that it his mockery was,

dô sis worden gewar.
when they-it became aware.

her sach offenlîche dar
he looked openly thither

âne vorhte und âne schaden.
without fear and without harm.

im was iedoch sîn herze entladen.
to-him was yet his heart unburdened.

ne mohte er ir niht nâher komen
— might he to-her not nearer come

iedoch was ime benomen
yet was from-him taken

sîner grôzen swâre ein teil.
of-his great heaviness a part.

wandez dûht in ein michel heil,
for-it seemed to-him a great fortune,

daz si in sô lieblîch ane sach.
that she him so lovingly at looked.

dô hielt her allen den tach
then halted he all the day

unze daz ez vinster wart.
until that it dark became.

dô hub her sich an die vart
then raised he himself on the way

und hin ze herbergen reit.
and thither to lodgings rode.

daz was ein michel arbeit
that was a great hardship

den gelieben beiden:
to-the lovers both:

daz sie sich mûsten scheiden,
that they themselves must part,

daz was âne ir beider dank.
that was without of-them both thanks.

wâr der tach einer wochen lank,
were the day a week long,

hern wâre niht dannen komen,
he had not thence come,

als ich die rede hân vernomen.
as I the tale have heard.

The Oaths, and the Broken Truce

L

On the day of the combat Latinus brings his gods to the meadow for the oaths. Aeneas tells the court how his ancestor Dardanus came from this land, how Troy fell, and how Latinus promised him Lavinia and the realm; if he dies, his son Ascanius shall have safe passage. While the champions prepare, a knight of Turnus's urges his companions to break the truce and spears a Trojan, and a battle breaks out. Latinus flees, and Aeneas rides in unarmed to stop it.

Dar nâch schiere quam der tach,
There after quickly came the day,

daz daz tagedink gelach
that the court-day lay

von den gûten knehten,
of the good knights,

die dâ solden vehten,
who there should fight,

Turnûs unde Ênêas,
Turnus and Aeneas,

alsô dô gelobet was.
as then vowed was.

der kunich ûz Laurente reit
the king out-of Laurentum rode

an eine schône wisen breit,
onto a fair meadow broad,

lank unde grûne,
long and green,

und Ênêas der kûne
and Aeneas the bold

und der stolze Turnûs.
and the proud Turnus.

dô reit der kunech Latînûs
then rode the king Latinus

vor mit sînen vorsten,
before with his princes,

di im helfen wol getorsten,
who him help well dared,

die tûrsten von dem lande,
the boldest of the land,

mit ir îsengewande
with their iron-garment

und mit schilden und mit speren,
and with shields and with spears,

alsô sie sich wolden weren
as they themselves would defend

ob es nôt wâre,
if it need were,

und die borgâre,
and the townsmen,

die dâ mite solden sîn,
who there with should be,

der alde kunich Latîn
the old king Latinus

der fûrde selbe sîne gote.
he carried self his gods.

her ne hete deheinen boten,
he — had no messenger,

den her si liezе rûren:
whom he them let touch:

her woldes selbe fûren,
he would-them self carry,

dar ûffe si sweren solden,
there upon they swear should,

die dâ vehten wolden
who there fight would

als si doch getâten.
as they yet did.

ez hete alsô gerâten
it had so counseled

der wîse kunich Latîn,
the wise king Latinus,

daz ir beider man solden sîn
that of-them both men should be

alsô verre hin dane,
so far away thence,

daz si niene sâgen ane
that they not-at-all saw at

daz dâ solde geschehen,
what there should happen,

man liezе siz niht ê sehen
one let them-it not ere see

wan soz ergangen wâre.
than when-it passed were.

daz het der kunich mâre
that had the king famous

getân dorch sîn gewarheit.
done for his wariness.

doch gwan hers michel arbeit.
yet won he-of-it great hardship.

Dô daz geschaffet was alsus,
When that arranged was thus,

dô hiez der kunech Latînûs
then bade the king Latinus

den kreiz bereiten,
the ring prepare,

einen teppich breiten
a carpet spread

an der wisen ûf daz gras.
on the meadow on the grass.

ein phelle drûf geleget was
a silk-cloth thereon laid was

vil tûre unde rîche,
very precious and rich,

den lobeten grôzlîche
it praised greatly

alle die in gesâgen.
all who it saw.

sîn gote dar ûffe lâgen,
his gods there upon lay,

dar ûffe sie solden sweren,
there upon they swear should,

die sich dâ wolden weren
who themselves there would defend

Ênêas und Turnûs.
Aeneas and Turnus.

daz meisterde Latînûs.
that mastered Latinus.

Dô sprach der hêre Ênêas
Then spoke the lord Aeneas

ein rede der im nôt was
a speech of-which to-him need was

ze dem kunige Latîne.
to the king Latinus.

daz hôrden die sîne
that heard the his-own

arme unde rîche,
poor and rich,

her sprach gezogenlîche
he spoke well-bred

,hêre kunich Latîn,
,lord king Latinus,

ob ez ûwer genâde sîn,
if it your grace be,

gerûchet hôren mîniu wort,
deign hear my words,

sumelîche hânt ez wol gehôrt,
some have it well heard,

wie ich her zû bin komen,
how I hither to am come,

sumelîche hânt es niht vernomen,
some have it not heard,

die wil ich daz siz merken
those will I that they-it mark

und ensolen mich niht sterken
and shall me not strengthen

an deheiner slahte unreht.
in no kind wrong.

wolde ich disen gûten kneht
would I this good knight

verderben dorch mînen hômût,
ruin through my pride,

dazn solde ûch niht dunken gût,
that should you not seem good,

wandez wâre eine missetât;
for-it were a misdeed;

ouch hân ichs gerne ûwern rât.‘
also have I-of-it gladly your counsel.‘

Aber sprach der Troiân
Again spoke the Trojan

‚mîn alder ane Dardân
‚my old forefather Dardanus

der was ein vorste hie bevoren
he was a prince here before

gewaldich unde wol geboren
mighty and well born

hie von diseme lande.
here from this land.

dô in Fortûnâ sande
when him Fortune sent

hin ze Troie in daz lant,
thither to Troy into the land,

dô gewan der wîgant
then won the warrior

einen sun der hiez Trôas,
a son who was-called Tros,

nâch dem Troie genamet was,
after whom Troy named was,

daz gnûge wizzen vor wâr.
that enough know for true.

sint heter Troien manech jâr
since had-he Troy many-a year

mit vil grôzer gewalt,
with very great power,

unz si der missetâte engalt,
until it of-the misdeed paid,

der Pâris tete an Elenam,
which Paris did to Helen,

dô her si Menelâô nam,
when he her from-Menelaus took,

dar umbe uns Menelâûs besaz.
there about us Menelaus besieged.

dô wiste ich wârlîche daz,
then knew I truly that,

daz ich ez niht mohte erweren.
that I it not might defend.

dô hiezen mich mîn lîb neren
then bade me my body save

mîne mâge die gote:
my kinsmen the gods:

alsus bin ich in ir gebote
thus am I in their command

komen mit arbeit here
come with hardship hither

uber diz breite mere
over this broad sea

an mîn rechtez erbe,
to my rightful inheritance,

daz ich hie gerne erwerbe.‘
which I here gladly win.‘

Her sprach ‚dô ich here quam,
He spoke ‚when I hither came,

do enphienk mich als im wol gezam
then received me as to-him well befitted

mîn hêre der kunich Latîn
my lord the king Latinus

und swûr mir die tohter sîn
and swore to-me the daughter his

ze gebenne ze wîbe
to give as wife

und nâch sîme lîbe
and after his life

sîn erbe und sîn rîche.
his inheritance and his realm.

daz wil gewaldechlîche
that will forcibly

der hêre Turnûs wenden.
the lord Turnus turn-away.

nû mûzen wirz verenden
now must we-it end

mit unser eines lîbe.
with of-us one's life.

is daz ich lebende blîbe
(if)-is that I living remain

und sal es glucke walden,
and shall of-it fortune rule,

sô wil ich gerne behalden
so will I gladly keep

ûwer tohter (sprach her), hêre mîn.
your daughter (spoke he), lord mine.

ich wil gerne ûr man sîn
I will gladly your man be

die wîle daz ich werde leben.
the while that I shall live.

swaz ir mir gerne wellet geben,
whatever you to-me gladly will give,

daz diene ich gerne swâ ich mach
that serve I gladly wherever I may

beidiu naht unde tach
both night and day

mit dienste und mit gûte.
with service and with goods.

ich wil michs gerne hûten,
I will me-of-it gladly guard,

daz ich ûwer holde
that I your favor

von mîner scholde
through my guilt

nimmer wil verwerken,
never will forfeit,

daz solt ir rehte merken.
that shall you rightly mark.

is aber daz ez sô ergêt,
(if)-is but that it so turns-out,

daz mich gewaldeget oder slêt
that me overpowers or slays

der herzoge Turnûs,
the duke Turnus,

so gedinge ich daz Ascânjûs
so hope I that Ascanius

mîn sun mit fride mûze varen.
my son with peace may fare.

daz solt ir, hêre, bewaren
that shall you, lord, guard

al nâch ûwern êren,
all after your honors,

swar her welle kêren,
whither he will turn,

her unde mîn here,
he and my host,

an dem lande od uber mere,
on the land or over sea,

swâ ez ime gevalle.‘
wherever it to-him please.‘

dô lobeten sie alle
then praised they all

des hêren Ênêases rede
the lord Aeneas's speech

und gâben sîme sune frede,
and gave to-his son peace,

ob ez alsô quâme,
if it so should-come,

daz Turnûs den sige nâme,
that Turnus the victory took,

daz Ascânjûs dar nâ
that Ascanius there after

gûten fride hete dâ
good peace had there

vierzên tage und vierzên naht
fourteen days and fourteen nights

und des wâre wol bedaht
and of-that were well provided-for

und sint dannen kêrde,
and since thence turned,

swar in sîn sin lêrde,
whither him his sense taught,

her unde sîn here.
he and his host.

wolder varen uber mere,
would-he fare over sea,

daz im daz geviele,
that to-him that pleased,

si wolden im sîn kiele
they would for-him his keels

spîsen unde bouwen:
provision and build:

daz gelobeten sie in trouwen.
that vowed they in faith.

Die wîle daz Ênêas
The while that Aeneas

an der rede alsô was
at the speech so was

und alsô schûf sîn dink
and so arranged his thing

und Turnûs der jungelink,
and Turnus the youngling,

daz si iezû sweren solden
that they just-now swear should

unde vehten wolden,
and fight would,

zû der selber zît
at the same time

wart ein michel strît
became a great strife

under ir zweier mannen,
between of-them two men,

die verre wâren dannen.
who far were thence.

den hûb ein Turnûses man,
it raised a Turnus's man,

des ich genennen niene kan.
whom I name not-at-all can.

her was ein ritâr wol geboren
he was a knight well born

unde sprach dorch sînen zoren
and spoke through his wrath

ze sînen gesellen allen
to his companions all

‚wir mogen uns schamen betalle,
‚we may us be-ashamed wholly,

daz wir uns lâzen an daz heil
that we us let on the fortune

und an unreht urteil
and on wrong judgment

und an Turnûm den einen man,
and on Turnus the one man,

der nie gelucke gewan
who never fortune won

wider Ênêam den Troiân.
against Aeneas the Trojan.

wirt daz heil sô getân,
becomes the fortune so made,

daz Ênêas gesiget
that Aeneas triumphs

und Turnûs hie tôt geliget,
and Turnus here dead lies,

daz wir dan iemer mêre
that we then ever more

schaden und unêre
harm and dishonor

von disen Troiânen mûzen dolen
from these Trojans must endure

und ouch verschalket wesen solen:
and also enslaved be shall:

got hône in, der ez geriet,
God shame him, who it counseled,

entrouwen ich ne volges niet.‘
in-faith I — follow-it not.‘

Aber sprach der helt gût
Again spoke the hero good

‚ich wil û sagen mînen mût,
‚I will to-you tell my spirit,

ob ez ûch dunket wol getân,
if it you seems well done,

sô râte ich daz wir bestân
so counsel I that we attack

des hêren Ênêases man,
the lord Aeneas's men,

dar ich nie trouwe zû gewan,
where I never faith to won,

die dort habent an der schare.
who there halt at the troop.

ich wil daz wir ûf si varen
I will that we upon them fare

unde sie dorchbrechen,
and them break-through,

wir slahens unde stechen
we slay-them and stab

mit den swerden und mit den speren,
with the swords and with the spears,

sin mogen sich uns niht erweren,
they may themselves from-us not defend,

si sint uns wol ze mâzen.
they are to-us well in measure.

daz wirz sô lange lâzen,
that we-it so long let,

daz is mir (sprach her) vile zorn.'
that is to-me (spoke he) very wrath.'

daz ros nam her mit den sporn,
the horse took he with the spurs,

niht mêre her ne sprach,
no more he — spoke,

einen Troiân her stach
a Trojan he thrust

von dem rosse in einen graben.
from the horse into a ditch.

dô wart ein michel strît erhaben,
then was a great strife raised,

her wart errochen schiere:
he was avenged quickly:

zwên Ênêê soldiere
two Aeneas's soldiers

den Troiân si râchen,
the Trojan they avenged,

ze tôde sie stâchen
to death they thrust

des hêren Turnûses man,
the lord Turnus's man,

der des strîtes began.
who the strife began.

Dâ was hômût unde nît.
There was pride and envy.

des wart vil herde der strît,
of-that became very hard the strife,

dô man sûchen began
when one to-seek began

des heren Ênêases man
the lord Aeneas's men

die sich vil vaste werden
who themselves very firmly defended

mit den scharphen swerden
with the sharp swords

und sich wole konden weren
and themselves well could ward-off

mit den swerden und mit den speren.
with the swords and with the spears.

mit den scharphen gêren
with the sharp spears

si macheten manegen sêren
they made many-a-one sore

unde mit den spiezen,
and with the javelins,

si slûgen unde stiezen
they struck and thrust

manege grôze wunden,
many great wounds,

diu nie ne wart gebunden.
which never — was bound.

si schuzzen vaste mit den bogen.
they shot firmly with the bows.

vile dicke dâ flogen
very often there flew

schefte unde phîle.
shafts and arrows.

dâ was eine wîle
there was a while

der strît vile herde
the strife very hard

die wîle daz her werde.
the while that it lasted.

Dâ was michel nôt.
There was great distress.

von diu lach ir vile tôt,
from that lay of-them many dead,

desn mohte dehein rât sîn.
of-that might no remedy be.

dô der kunich Latîn
when the king Latinus

diu starken mâre vernam,
the strong tidings heard,

ez dûhte in vile freissam,
it seemed to-him very terrible,

her wânde er wâre verrâten:
he weened he were betrayed:

her drowete den diez tâten,
he threatened those who-it did,

ez ne dûhte in niht ein spot.
it — seemed to-him not a jest.

her nam sînen liebsten got,
he took his dearest god,

der andern aller her vergaz,
the others all he forgot,

hern konde niht gedenken baz,
he could not think better,

wan als im sîn zageheit riet:
save as him his cowardice counseled:

hern trouwete genesen niet,
he trusted recover not,

daz herm gehelfen mohte,
that he-him help might,

her hûb sich ze flohte.
he raised himself to flight.

dô daz gesach Ênêas,
when that saw Aeneas,

als ungewâfent sô her was
as unarmed as he was

sprank her schiere ûf ein ravît:
sprang he quickly onto a palfrey:

her wolde scheiden den strît.
he would part the strife.

Aeneas Wounded

LI

Aeneas rides out without his armor to part the fighters, and an archer shoots a poisoned arrow into his right arm. Ascanius and four men carry him to his tent, where the physician Iapis draws the head from the bone and heals the wound. Hearing he is wounded, Turnus arms and leads a fresh troop into the battle. The Trojan Neptanabus defies Turnus and is killed by him. Turnus rallies his men and drives the weary Trojans back toward their tent, but when Aeneas rides out healed and armed, Turnus flees in disgrace.

Den schilt her an den hals hienk,
The shield he on the neck hung,

ein sper her in die hant gevienk,
a spear he into the hand caught,

her quam vil schiere dâ si striten,
he came very quickly where they fought,

wande her was wol geriten.
for he was well horsed.

her gebôt sînen mannen,
he commanded to-his men,

daz si kêrden dannen.
that they turned thence.

ez̧n was aber dô niht zît,
it was but then not time,

si wâren sô komen in den strît,
they were so come into the fight,

daz si mit deheinen êren
that they with no honors

dar ûz̧ mohten gekêren.
there out might turn.

des erbalch sich Ênêas
of-that angered himself Aeneas

dorch daz der kamph erlenget was
through that the combat lengthened was

zwischen im und Turnûm,
between him and Turnus,

den her gerne wolde tûn.
which he gladly would do.

Daz aber der hêre Ênêas
That but the lord Aeneas

dar ungewâfent komen was,
there unarmed come was,

des gewan her schaden vile grôz.
of-that won he harm very great.

ein schutze im dorch den arm schôz
an archer him through the arm shot

mit eime geluptem phîle
with a poisoned arrow

(daz was ein ubel wîle,
(that was an evil while,

als ime wart vil wole schîn)
as to-him became very well shown)

in den zeswen arm sîn.
into the right arm his.

dar greif der wîgant
there grasped the warrior

mit der winsteren hant,
with the left hand,

ûz zuckete her den zein:
out pulled he the shaft:

dô bleib daz îsen in dem bein
then remained the iron in the bone

sô wundern vast dar inne,
so wondrously fast there in,

daz herz niht mohte gewinnen.
that he-it not might win.

her was von zorne worden warm.
he was from wrath become warm.

dô geswal im der arm
then swelled to-him the arm

von dem bûche unz an die hant:
from the shoulder until to the hand:

daz ervorhte der wîgant.
that feared the warrior.

Hern wiste waz her solde tûn.
He-not knew what he should do.

dô quam Ascânjûs sîn sun
then came Ascanius his son

und sîner manne viere.
and of-his men four.

si brahten in vil schiere
they brought him very quickly

von dem strîte uber daz velt
from the fight over the field

und leiten in in sîn gezelt.
and laid him into his tent.

Ênêas der wunde man
Aeneas the wounded man

her schûf daz man ime gewan
he brought-about that one for-him won

einen arzât, in sîner wîs
a physician, in his way

was her geheizen Lâpîs.
was he called Iapis.

her konde vil der bûche.
he could much of-the books.

sîne malhen her resûchte,
his bag he searched,

schiere her dar ûz nam
quickly he there out took

triakel unde dictam
theriac and dittany

und ein wênege zange
and a little tongs

gefûge unde lange,
fitting and long,

slehte unde kleine,
smooth and small,

dâ mit her ûz dem beine
there with he out-of the bone

daz phîlîsen gewan
the arrowhead won

und ernerde den edelen man,
and saved the noble man,

wanderz wolde kunde.
for-he-it would know.

her heilde im die wunde
he healed to-him the wound

mit pigmente vile gût
with spices very good

unde trôste im sînen mût
and comforted to-him his spirit

dem hêren âne laster.
to-the lord without reproach.

her machete im ein phlaster,
he made to-him a plaster,

den arm her im dâ mite bewant
the arm he to-him there with wound

von der asseln her unz an die hant,
from the armpit he until to the hand,

dâ von her vil schiere genas.
there from he very quickly survived.

dô wâfende sich Ênêas,
then armed himself Aeneas,

wander sîner lûte vorhte.
for-he of-his people feared.

wunder her sint worhte
wonders he since wrought

des tages in dem strîte.
of-the day in the fight.

dar quam her an der zîte.
thither came he at the time.

Dô ez komen was alsus
When it come was thus

und ez vernam Turnûs,
and it heard Turnus,

daz der hêre Ênêas
that the lord Aeneas

sô freislîchen wunt was,
so terribly wounded was,

des wart sîn herze vile frô
of-that became his heart very glad

und erhûb sich sîn gemûte hô.
and raised itself his mind high.

her wâfende sich sâ zehant,
he armed himself then at-once,

sînen helm her ûf bant,
his helmet he up bound,

sîn îsenhosen leit her an.
his iron-hose laid he on.

selbe nam her sînen van,
self took he his banner,

her leite ein hêrlîche schare
he led a lordly troop

ze storme harde wole gare
to assault very well ready

und hûb sich vaste in den strît
and raised himself firmly into the fight

und quam dar als die dûhte zît,
and came thither as them seemed time,

den her ze helfe quam.
to-whom he to help came.

dô wart ein storm freissam.
then became a assault terrible.

Mit grôzer mankrefte
With great host-strength

zestâchen sie die schefte,
broke-apart they the shafts,

daz die sprindeln ûf flogen.
that the splinters up flew.

diu swert si riterlîche erzogen,
the swords they knightly drew,

lûte si erklungen.
loudly they rang.

dâ si ze samene drungen
where they to gathering pressed

der wech wart dâ vil enge,
the way became there very narrow,

dâ wart grôz gedrenge
there became great throng

in dem wîten gevilde.
in the wide field.

sie zerhiewen die schilde,
they hewed-apart the shields,

als si wâren von glase.
as-if they were of glass.

dâ lach blûtich in dem grase
there lay bloody in the grass

vil manech bodech âne houbet,
very many-a trunk without head,

daz es nieman geloubet.
that it no-one believes.

an den zwein strîten
in the two fights

was in korzen zîten
was in short times

vile manech helt gût
very many-a hero good

stolz unde hôchgemût,
proud and high-minded,

daz dâ vile wole schein.
that there very well shone.

dâ ne wolde ir nehein
there — would of-them none

dem anderen entwîchen.
from-the other give-way.

sie liezen dare strîchen
they let thither sweep

die degene ûz erwelde
the warriors out chosen

die Turnûses helde
the Turnus's heroes

und die Troiâne.
and the Trojans.

dâ wart des lîbes âne
there became of-the life without

vile maneger mûder baren,
very many-a mother's bairn,

dâ sich gemischten die scharen,
where themselves mingled the companies,

dâ schare wider schare drank.
where troop against troop pressed.

ez wâre ze sagene alze lank,
it were to tell all-too long,

wer dâ genas und wer dâ starf,
who there survived and who there died,

die man alle nennen niet endarf
whom one all name not needs

noch genennen niene mach,
nor name not-at-all can,

wan daz ir vil dâ tôt lach.
save that of-them many there dead lay.

Si wâren helide gûte.
They were heroes good.

des wart dâ von dem blûte
of-that became there from the blood

daz gras rôt und der melm.
the grass red and the dust.

dâ wart verscrôten manech helm
there became hacked many-a helmet

unde manech sarrink.
and many-a mail-ring.

dâ quam ein stolzer jungelink
there came a proud youngling

engegen Turnô gevaren,
toward Turnus fared,

dô her quam mit sîner scharen.
when he came with his company.

der Troiân hiez Neptânâbûs.
the Trojan was-called Neptanabus.

‚got weiz (sprach her), hêr Turnûs,
‚God knows (spoke he), sir Turnus,

ir wânet des niht sîn mach,
you suppose of-it not be may,

ir uberwindet disen tach
you overcome this day

nimmêr mit ûwern êren.
never with your honors.

ir habet unsern hêren
you have our lord

verrâten in den trouwen.
betrayed in the faith.

daz sal ûch gerouwen
that shall you rue

an diseme tage hûte.
on this day today.

nû welt ir unser lûte
now will you our people

alle vahen unde slân:
all catch and slay:

ez mûz al anders ergân.
it must all otherwise turn-out.

is mîn hêre nû wunt,
is my lord now wounded,

her mach wol werden gesunt,
he may well become healthy,

sô daz irs komet in grôze nôt.
so that you-of-it come into great distress.

und wâre her nû gare tôt,
and were he now wholly dead,

beide her und sîn sun,
both he and his son,

und woldet ir gewalt uns tûn,
and would you force to-us do,

wir solden uns fromechlîche weren.
we should ourselves valiantly defend.

irn dorfets nimmer gegeren,
you would-need-it never desire,

ezn sî daz ich ersterbe.
unless-it be that I die.

diz lant is unser erbe: 12000
this land is our inheritance:

wâr halt Ênêas begraben,
were even Aeneas buried,

dannoch sô wold ich behaben
still so would I keep

mit den frunden mînen
with the friends mine

die schônen Lavînen
the fair Lavinia

und daz kunichrîche 12005
and the kingdom

und wolde namelîche
and would surely

kunich hie belîben.
king here remain.

irn moget uns niht vertrîben,
you may us not drive-out,

sô wol erkenne ich ûwer maht,
so well know I your might,

als lîhte als ir habet gedaht.‘
as easily as you have thought.‘

Turnô was diu rede zorn.
To-Turnus was the speech wrath.

diu ros hiewens mit den sporn,
the horses hewed-they with the spurs,

dâ si beide ûf sâzen.
where they both upon sat.

der rede sie vergâzen.
the speech they forgot.

Neptânâbûs Turnûm stach,
Neptanabus Turnus thrust,

sô daz im sîn spere brach,
so that to-him his spear broke,

mit micheleme zorne
with great wrath

in sînen schilt vorne.
into his shield in-front.

dazn war Turnô niht ein bast,
that was to-Turnus not a bast,

wande sîn schilt der was vast.
for his shield it was firm.

dô her dem stiche gesaz,
when he the thrust withstood,

des geldes her im niht vergaz
of-the repayment he to-him not forgot

Turnûs der wîgant,
Turnus the warrior,

wander fûrde an sîner hant
for-he carried in his hand

einen wol geslihten spiez:
a well smoothed javelin:

dorch den halsberch her in stiez
through the hauberk he him thrust

und in daz herze dorch den lîb.
and into the heart through the body.

her sprach ‚ich behalde mîn wîb
he spoke ‚I keep my woman

und mîn kunichrîche
and my kingdom

vor dir gewaldechlîche
before thee mightily

immer unze an mînen tôt.
ever until to my death.

dû mûst mich lâzen âne nôt,
thou must me leave without need,

wandich von dir erlôst bin.
for-I from thee freed am.

dû soldest dînen bôsen sin
thou shouldst thy evil sense

gescholden haben der dirz geriet:
reviled have which to-thee-it counseled:

ichn bin ein verrâtâre niet.
I am a traitor not.

hâstû mich bescholden,
hast-thou me reviled,

daz is dir wol vergolden,
that is to-thee well repaid,

daz ichz nimmer geklage.
that I-it never lament.

ezn sî daz man dich hinnen trage,
unless-it be that one thee hence carry,

sô mûst dû der erden
so must thou to-the earth

hie ze teile werden,
here to share become,

dîn fleisch und dîn gebeine.
thy flesh and thy bones.

dû geligest aleine
thou liest alone

alles dînes kunnes.
of-all thy kin.

ob dû ie vîant gewunnes,
if thou ever enemy won,

den hân ich vil wole erlôst.
him have I very well freed.

Ênêas darf neheinen trôst
Aeneas needs no comfort

zû dir haben mêre,
to thee have more,

swar sô ich gekêre.‘
whither so I turn.‘

Dô der hêre Turnûs
When the lord Turnus

sich gerochen hete alsus,
himself avenged had thus,

dô was her frô unde gemeit.
then was he glad and joyful.

vermeꝛzenlîche er danne reit,
boldly he thence rode,

her besande aber sîne man.
he sent-for again his men.

vile schiere her gewan
very quickly he won

grôꝛ here under sînen van.
great host under his banner.

die Troiâr rander aber an,
the Trojans charged-he again at,

wand der hêre Ênêas
for the lord Aeneas

dâ bî in niene was
there by them not-at-all was

und si ouch mûde wâren
and they also weary were

und in diu lide swâren
and to-them the limbs grew-heavy

von grôꝛen stichen unde slegen.
from great thrusts and blows.

si heten manegen gûten degen:
they had many-a good warrior:

sin mohten im niht gestrîten
they might with-him not fight

wol zû den selben zîten
well at the same times

vor der grôzen uberkraft.
before the great over-strength.

des wart Turnûs sigehaft
of-that became Turnus victorious

an Ênêases mannen.
over Aeneas's men.

si mûsten wîchen dannen.
they must give-way thence.

die Troiâne mit ir van
the Trojans with their banner

flohen gezogenlîche dan
fled well-bred thence

werhaft uber daz velt
defensively over the field

engegen ir hêren gezelt.
toward their lord's tent.

dâ widerreit in Ênêas,
there rode-against them Aeneas,

wol gewâfent her was,
well armed he was,

der leite ein sûberlîche schar.
he led a fine company.

dô des Turnûs wart gewar,
when of-that Turnus became aware,

daz der hêre Ênêas
that the lord Aeneas

gewâfent unde genesen was
armed and saved was

don trouwete er sich niht erneren,
then trusted he himself not to-save,

iedoch wolder den lîb erweren,
yet would-he the life defend,

hern wolde sterben dannoch
he-not would die still

unde flouch, ungerne iedoch:
and fled, unwillingly yet:

desn mohte ander rât sîn.
of-that-not might other counsel be.

daz wart im vil wole schîn,
that became to-him very well shown,

her mûste dannen kêren
he must thence turn

mit schanden, niht mit êren.
with disgrace, not with honors.

Turnus Routed, and Lavinia's Tokens

LII

Aeneas drives Turnus's army into Laurentum and burns the outer town. Turnus offers to fight Aeneas alone, and Latinus sets the combat again with hostages from both sides. From a high palace Lavinia watches the champions ride out and laments that she gave Aeneas no token, hair-band, veil, sleeve, ring, or belt, to make him stronger. She vows to throw herself from the tower if he is killed, but trusts that he has kept her letter. Both champions arm and mount their horses.

Dô der hêre Turnûs
When the lord Turnus

fluhtich wart alsus,
fleeing became thus,

âne strît und âne were,
without fight and without defense,

don was niht wunder ob sîn here
then was no wonder if his host

ein teil verzagete.
a part despaired.

wie gewaldechlîch dô jagete
how mightily then chased

der herzoge Ênêas!
the duke Aeneas!

swes ros dô niht snel was
whose horse then not swift was

under Turnûses mannen,
among Turnus's men,

der ne quam neheiner dannen.
he — came none thence.

swes ros niht mohte loufen,
whose horse not might run,

der mûstez tûre koufen
he must-it dearly buy

mit sîn selbes lebene,
with his own life,

swiez im was ze gebene.
however-it to-him was to give.

swer zû der erde dâ quam,
whoever to the earth there came,

vil unsanft er sîn ende nam.
very ungently he his end took.

swelher dâ besnebete,
whichever there stumbled,

vil unlange er lebete,
very not-long he lived,

wander wart ertrettet.
for-he was trampled.

im was dâ sô gebettet,
to-him was there so bedded,

daz̧ her immer mêr dâ lach
that he ever more there lay

unz an den jungisten tach.
until to the last day.

Ênêas was erbolgen.
Aeneas was angered.

swen her mohte ervolgen
whomever he might overtake

und mit dem swerde erlangen,
and with the sword reach,

des leben was ergangen,
whose life was gone,

swie gerne her sich werde.
however gladly he himself defended.

mit dem scharphen swerde,
with the sharp sword,

daz̧ dâ smidete Vulcân,
which there forged Vulcan,

dâ mit slûch der Troiân
there with struck the Trojan

manegen freislîchen slach.
many-a terrible stroke.

vil unde vil dâ tôt lach
many and many there dead lay

der rosse und der manne.
of-the horses and of-the men.

Ênêas treib si danne
Aeneas drove them thence

unz zû Laurente in die borch
until to Laurentum into the castle

die strâz̧e al dorch unde dorch.
the street all through and through.

her slûch si zû der porten in.
he struck them to the gate in.

dâ was michel gewin
there was great gain

den die dâ jageten.
to-those who there chased.

die andern die verzageten,
the others who despaired,

si liezen schilde unde spere
they let shields and spears

und aller slahte gewere,
and all kinds-of defense,

manech ros wol getân
many-a horse well made

liezen sie ledich stân
let they free stand

unde entrunnen dar abe
and escaped there off

unde flohen in die graben,
and fled into the ditches,

daz si den lîb nerden.
that they the body saved.

niht langer sie sich werden.
no longer they themselves defended.

Ênêas was des vile frô,
Aeneas was of-it very glad,

daz ez komen was alsô,
that it come was so,

daz Turnûs was verzaget
that Turnus was despaired

und daz her in hete gejaget
and that he him had chased

ze Laurente mit gewalt.
to Laurentum with force.

dô schûfz der mâre helt balt
then made-it the famous hero bold

mit manlîchen dingen.
with manly things.

dâ hiez fûre bringen
there bade fire bring

der herzoge Ênêas
the duke Aeneas

swaz in der inren mûre was
whatever in the inner wall was

und dem ûzerem graben,
and the outer ditch,

daz brander allez samet abe,
that burned-he all together off,

swem ez leit wâre.
to-whom it grievous were.

dô die borgâre
when the townsmen

daz verborge sâgen brinnen,
the outer-bailey saw burn,

dô vorhten si in dar innen
then feared they for-themselves there inside

in der mittern mûren,
in the middle walls,

koufman und gebûren,
merchants and peasants,

ritter unde hêren.
knights and lords.

do begonde der zorn sich mêren.
then began the wrath itself to-increase.

Dô klagete ez Latînûs.
Then lamented it Latinus.

dô antworde im Turnûs
then answered him Turnus

vor allen den gûten knehten,
before all the good knights,

her sprach ‚ich wil vehten
he spoke ‚I will fight

eine wider den Troiân.
alone against the Trojan.

getar mich Ênêas bestân,
dares me Aeneas attack,

ich wil ime an gesigen
I will to-him over triumph

oder mit êren tôt geligen,
or with honor dead lie,

ê danne ich die schande
ere than I the disgrace

dole in diseme lande
endure in this land

von ime an mînem lîbe,
from him on my body,

oder daz her mich vertrîbe,
or that he me drive-out,

ich wil ê kiesen den tôt.‘
I will sooner choose the death.‘

der kunich die rede enbôt
the king the speech sent

Ênêase dem Troiân,
to-Aeneas the Trojan,

ob her den kamph wolde hân,
if he the combat would have,

alsô her gelobet was.
as he vowed was.

dô sprach der hêre Ênêas
then spoke the lord Aeneas

der kûne und der stâte,
the bold and the steadfast,

daz her in gerne hâte:
that he it gladly had:

Turnûs dô niene beite,
Turnus then not-at-all waited,

ze kamphe er sich bereite.
to combat he himself prepared.

als tet der hêre Ênêas.
so did the lord Aeneas.

alsô gewâfent sô her was
as armed as he was

her quam zû dem strîte,
he came to the fight,

daz her sich zû der zîte
that he himself at the time

niender wâfende baz;
nowhere armed better;

wan daz her ûf ein ros saz.
save that he onto a horse sat.

alsô tete ouch Turnûs.
so did also Turnus.

selbe der kunech Latînûs
self the king Latinus

her ne sûmete ez niet:
he — delayed it not:

her schûf ez unde beriet,
he arranged it and provided,

als ez ime wol gezam.
as it to-him well befitted.

von in beiden her nam
from them both he took

gîsel dier dar zû erkôs,
hostages whom-he there to chose,

sweder ir dâ worde sigelôs
whichever of-them there should-become victoryless

oder sweder ir den sige gewunne,
or whichever of-them the victory won,

daz des andern man und sîn kunne
that of-the other men and his kin

der vîantschefte sich verzigen
of-the enmity themselves renounced

und des hazzes geswigen
and of-the hatred were-silent

unde daz versprâchen,
and that forswore,

daz siz nimmer gerâchen.
that they-it never avenged.

ûf alsô getâne rede
on so made terms

schûf der kunich einen frede.
made the king a peace.

Uz Laurente dô reit
Out-of Laurentum then rode

ein schar lank unde breit
a company long and broad

mit den zwein gûten knehten,
with the two good knights,

die dâ wolden vehten,
who there would fight,

Turnûs unde Ênêas,
Turnus and Aeneas,

da der kamph ê gelobet was,
where the combat ere vowed was,

der alsô was gescheiden,
which so was parted,

daz ez in schadete beiden
that it them harmed both

und dem kunige Latîne.
and the king Latinus.

dô was diu maget Lavîne
then was the maiden Lavinia

ûf ein palas vile hô
on a palace very high

und sach daz man ez schûf alsô,
and saw that one it arranged so,

daz sie dâ vehten solden
that they there fight should

die si beide haben wolden.
who her both have would.

umb den einen leit si grôze nôt,
for the one suffered she great distress,

lâge aber der ander tôt
should-lie but the other dead

dâ wâre ir lutzel leides umbe.
there were to-her little of-sorrow about.

‚ôwê (sprach si), ich tumbe,
‚alas (spoke she), I foolish-one,

wie krankes herzen ich bin.
how sick of-heart I am.

âne witze und âne sin!
without wit and without sense!

diu gelîche hân ich wol getân,
the like have I well done,

daz Ênêas der Troiân
that Aeneas the Trojan

der lobesâlige man
the praise-blessed man

mîn kleinôde nie gewan.‘
my jewel never won.‘

Si sprach ‚het her mîn hârbant!
She spoke ‚had he my hair-band!

daz ichz ime hete gesant,
that I-it to-him had sent,

wie lieb mir daz nû wâre!
how dear to-me that now were!

hetez der helt mâre
had-it the hero famous

umb sîn houbet gebunden,
about his head bound,

sô wâre im vor den wunden
so were to-him from the wounds

daz houbet deste baz behût
the head the better guarded

und wâre im vor die slege gût.
and were to-him against the blows good.

ôwê (sprach si), ich unwîse,
alas (spoke she), I unwise-one,

heter aber mîne rîse
had-he but my veil

nû ze disen stunden
now at these hours

an sînen schaft gebunden,
on his shaft bound,

daz ez wâre âne laster,
that it were without reproach,

sô wâre ouch deste vaster
so were also the firmer

sîn spere unde sîn schaft,
his spear and his shaft,

ouch heter deste grôzer kraft.‘
also had-he the greater strength.‘

Aber sprach diu junkfrouwe
Again spoke the young-lady

,hete her doch mîne mouwe
,had he yet my sleeve

an den armen sînen,
on the arms his,

ez solde wole schînen
it should well shine

dem goteleiden Turnûm,
to-the God-hated Turnus,

sone mohter wider in niht getûn,
so might-he against him nothing do,

wand Ênêas wâre sô stark,
for Aeneas were so strong,

daz ichz niht nâme vor tûsent mark,
that I-it not would-take for thousand marks,

ob si alle wâren golt rôt,
if they all were gold red,

wandez wâre Turnûses tôt.
for-it were Turnus's death.

Het er (sprach si) mîn vingerlîn,
Had he (spoke she) my little-ring,

her solde deste tûrer sîn
he should the more-precious be

und sterker ein michel teil
and stronger a great part

und hete deste bezzer heil,
and had the better fortune,

wan des wâre her wol wert:
for of-that were he well worthy:

sô gloubetich daz sîn swert
so believed-I that his sword

vil snite deste baz.
much would-cut the better.

ôwî daz ich des ie vergaz,
alas that I of-it ever forgot,

daz ich si niene sande
that I it not-at-all sent

dem edelen wîgande!
to-the noble warrior!

wê dem unrâte,
woe to-the ill-counsel,

nu gedenke ich es ze spâte.‘
now think I of-it too late.‘

Si sprach zem andern worde
She spoke to-the other word

‚heter nû disen borden,
‚had-he now this belt,

dâ mit ich gegordet bin,
there with I girded am,

her hete maht unde sin
he had might and sense

ein michel teil deste mêr.
a great part the more.

war umbe gedahte ich es niht êr,
where fore thought I of-it not before,

ê dannez quâme her zû!
ere than-it should-come hither to!

daz ich sô selden wole tû,
that I so seldom well do,

daz kumt von unsinne.
that comes from folly.

ich hân im doch mîn minne
I have to-him yet my love

und mîn dienest enboten.
and my service sent-word.

ich hân in allen mînen goten
I have him to-all my gods

sunderlîche bevolen
especially commended

und lâze daz si unverholen,
and let that be unconcealed,

sine behalden im sîn êre,
unless-they keep for-him his honor,

daz ich in niemer mêre
that I them never more

deheinen dienest getû,
any service do,

alsô sehen sie dar zû!‘
so look they there to!“

Si sprach ‚word Ênêas erslagen,
She spoke ‚became Aeneas slain,

sô mûz ich offenlîche sagen
so must I openly say

mînen goten allen,
to-my gods all,

daz ich mich wil ervallen
that I myself will fall

von diseme turne hin nider,
from this tower away down,

dâ nis nehein rede wider.
there is no speech against.

dem ich mîne minne enbôt,
to-whom I my love sent-word,

gelâge er hie noch hûte tôt,
should-lie he here still today dead,

ichn worde nimmer mannes wîb.
I should-become never man's woman.

got behûte im sînen lîb!‘
God guard for-him his life!‘

Si sprach ‚ich bin des aber gewis,
She spoke ‚I am of-that but certain,

daz Ênêas sô hovesch is
that Aeneas so courtly is

und im diu minne is alsô lief,
and to-him the love is so dear,

her hât iedoch mînen brief
he has yet my letter

behalden dorch den willen mîn:
kept for the will mine:

her sal deste sterker sîn
he shall the stronger be

und deste kûner sibenwarf,
and the bolder sevenfold,

des ich vile wol bedarf,
of-which I very well need,

daz her behalde sîn leben.
that he keep his life.

die gnâde mûze uns got geben,
the grace may us God give,

daz wir uns scheiden niht sô frû,
that we us part not so early,

ê unser ietwederz getû
ere of-us each do

dem andern daz im lieb sî.‘
to-the other what to-him dear be.‘

dô wasez der vesperzîte bî.
then was-it of-the vespertime near.

Dô si des geredete vile
When she of-that spoke much

mit grôzem ernste niht ze spile
with great earnest not in jest

mit sorgen und mit leide,
with cares and with sorrow,

dô wâren sie beide,
then were they both,

Turnûs und Ênêas,
Turnus and Aeneas,

gewâfent als in nôt was
armed as to-them need was

wol und ritterlîche.
well and knightly.

si wâren beide rîche
they were both rich

manhaft und hôchgemût.
manful and high-minded.

ir beider wâfen wâren gût.
of-them both weapons were good.

Ênêas der Troiân
Aeneas the Trojan

der saz ûf ein kastelân,
he sat on a destrier,

daz in ritterlîche trûch:
which him knightly bore:

ez was stark und snel genûch.
it was strong and swift enough.

Turnûs saz ûf ein ravît,
Turnus sat on a charger,

dar ûffe er uber den strît
there upon he over the fight

reit genendechlîche:
rode boldly:

ez was edel unde rîche.
it was noble and rich.

The Duel

LIII

Aeneas and Turnus joust, and both horses fall. They fight on foot until near nightfall; Vulcan's armor protects Aeneas. Seeing Lavinia at the window, Aeneas strikes off part of Turnus's helmet and half his shield. Turnus strikes Aeneas to his knees but breaks his sword, flees, throws a great stone, and fights with a broken shaft, until Aeneas cuts off his thigh. Turnus yields land and woman and asks only for his life, and Aeneas is moved to spare him.

Turnûs der helt wol geboren
Turnus the hero well born

daz ravît hiu her mit den sporen,
the palfrey hewed he with the spurs,

daz stark unde snel was.
which strong and swift was.

dô gesach Ênêas,
then saw Aeneas,

daz Turnûs gegen ime quam,
that Turnus toward him came,

sîn ros her mit den sporen nam,
his horse he with the spurs took,

beide sie genanden,
both they dared,

ze samene sie geranden,
to gathering they rode,

ir deweder wolde wenken.
of-them neither would waver.

diu spere liezens senken
the spears let-they sink

die helide wol geborne.
the heroes well born.

mit grimmigeme zorne
with grim wrath

Turnûs Ênêam stach,
Turnus Aeneas thrust,

daz der schaft von dem stiche brach
that the shaft from the thrust broke

und vil nâ dar nider lach.
and very nearly there down lay.

wol her im daz wider wach,
well he to-him that back weighed,

die stegereife her behilt,
the stirrups he kept,

her stach Turnûm dorch den schilt.
he thrust Turnus through the shield.

dô fûrde aber Ênêas
then carried but Aeneas

einen schilt der sô vast was,
a shield which so firm was,

daz in nieman mohte enginnen.
that it no-one might cleave.

her was mit solhen sinnen
it was with such senses

behûtet und gebunden,
guarded and bound,

in mohte niht verwunden.
it might nothing wound.

iedoch stach ir ietweder
yet thrust of-them each

den anderen dar neder,
the other there down,

daz ez vil lûte sâgen.
that it very loud sounded.

ir beider ros gelâgen
of-them both horses lay

diu starken und diu grôzen
the strong and the great

von dem grimmen stôzen,
from the grim shocks,

daz si einander stiezen.
that they one-another thrust.

diu ros si ligen liezen.
the horses they lie let.

Balde si ûf sprungen,
Quickly they up sprang,

ze samene sie drungen
to gathering they pressed

mit grimmigeme mûte
with grim spirit

die zwêne degene gûte.
the two warriors good.

Turnûs was ein snel man,
Turnus was a swift man,

schiere her sîn swert gewan.
quickly he his sword won.

alsô tete Ênêas
so did Aeneas

daz sîne daz vil gût was.
the his-own which very good was.

daz gehilze was von golde.
the hilt was of gold.

ir newederre wolde
of-them neither would

dem andern entwîchen,
from-the other give-way,

sie liezen dare strîchen.
they let thither sweep.

dô si ze samene quâmen,
when they to gathering came,

si gâben unde nâmen
they gave and took

slege grimme unde grôz.
blows grim and great.

wârez ûf einen anebôz
were-it on an anvil

zwischen zwein starken smiden
between two strong smiths

mit wol gerûweten liden,
with well rested limbs,

ezne dorft niht lûter hellen
it needed not louder ring

dan von den heliden snellen,
than from the heroes swift,

wande si gûte helme trûgen.
for they good helmets wore.

grôze slege sie slûgen
great blows they struck

ûf die helme und ûf die schilde.
on the helmets and on the shields.

uber ein breit gevilde
over a broad field

ein halbe welsche mîle
a half French mile

hôrde man die wîle
heard one the while

manegen freislîchen slach.
many-a terrible stroke.

alsô verslûgen sie den tach
so struck-away they the day

unze vil nâch zû der naht.
until very near to the night.

Turnûs gnendechlîche vaht.
Turnus boldly fought.

Dô het aber Ênêas
Then had but Aeneas

ein gewâfen daz sô gût was,
an armor that so good was,

helme halsberge unde swert,
helmet hauberk and sword,

daz was im dô tûsent mark wert,
that was to-him then thousand marks worth,

îsenhôsen unde schilt,
iron-hose and shield,

wandez ime den lîb behilt
for-it to-him the body kept

vor Turnô zû den stunden:
from Turnus at the hours:

hern moht sîn niht verwunden:
he might him not wound:

her noch dehein man,
he nor any man,

der ie den lîb gewan,
who ever the body won,

ne mohtes niht zebrechen,
— might-it not break,

dorchslahen noch dorchstechen.
strike-through nor stab-through.

des verlôs Turnûs sîn leben.
of-that lost Turnus his life.

daz gewâfen hete im gegeben
the armor had to-him given

der smide got Volcân
the smiths' god Vulcan

unde ein swert sô getân,
and a sword so made,

daz niht solhes enwas.
that nothing such was.

dâ mit vaht Ênêas,
there with fought Aeneas,

der des lîbes was ein degen
who of-the body was a warrior

und ein meister ze grôzen slegen.
and a master at great blows.

Sîne solde nieman scheiden,
Them should no-one part,

wand in was ernest beiden
for to-them was earnest both

und vohten grimmechlîche
and fought grimly

umbez kunichrîche
for-the kingdom

und umb die êre und umbez wîb
and for the honor and for-the woman

und ir ietweder umben lîb.
and of-them each for-the life.

Turnûs der helt balt
Turnus the hero bold

vaht mit grôzer gewalt,
fought with great force,

her was von zorne worden warm.
he was from wrath become warm.

ûf hûb her den arm
up raised he the arm

der ernesthafte wîgant
the earnest warrior

und die ellenthaften hant,
and the valiant hand,

dâ her daz swert mite trûch:
where he the sword with bore:

dem hêrn Ênêê her slûch
to-the lord Aeneas he struck

einen slach wol ze lobene
a stroke well to praise

ûf den helm obene
on the helmet above

mit dem scharphen swerde.
with the sharp sword.

dô was der helm sô herde,
then was the helmet so hard,

daz her sich niene gebouch.
that it itself not-at-all bent.

daz fûre ouch dar ûz flouch,
the fire also there out flew,

daz grôz unde lieht was.
which great and bright was.

des erbalch sich Ênêas.
of-that angered himself Aeneas.

Turnûs was des slages gemeit,
Turnus was of-the blow glad,

doch was ez Ênêase leit,
yet was it to-Aeneas grievous,

wandern ime wole galt.
for-he-not to-him well repaid.

dô gesach der helt balt
then saw the hero bold

Ênêas der Troiân
Aeneas the Trojan

Lavînen zû dem venster stân:
Lavinia at the window stand:

des gewan der helt gût
of-that won the hero good

grimmigen hôhen mût,
grim high spirit,

wand im diu maget lieb was.
for to-him the maiden dear was.

dô rach sich hêr Ênêas:
then avenged himself lord Aeneas:

daz swert her hôhe ûf trûch,
the sword he high up bore,

Turnûm her ûfz houbet slûch,
Turnus he on-the head struck,

hern vermiste sîn niet,
he missed him not,

des helmes her im abe schriet
of-the helmet he to-him off cut

vil nâch einer hende lank.
very nearly a hand long.

daz was ein freislîch swank
that was a terrible stroke

Turnô dem jungelinge.
to-Turnus the youngling.

her verschriet im ouch die ringe
he cut to-him also the rings

bî dem houbete ein teil.
by the head a part.

dô nâhete im ein unheil,
then neared to-him a misfortune,

daz man wole sagen mach.
that one well say may.

von dem houbete gienk der slach
from the head went the stroke

Turnô in sînes schildes rant,
to-Turnus into his shield's rim,

den slûch im der wîgant
that struck to-him the warrior

Ênêas halben hin dane.
Aeneas half away away.

des gienk Turnûm angest ane.
of-that went to-Turnus fear on.

Turnûs der edel man
Turnus the noble man

dô her den grôzen slach gewan;
when he the great stroke won;

den im tete Ênêas,
which to-him did Aeneas,

und im der helm verscrôten was
and to-him the helmet hacked was

und ouch der schilt abe geslagen,
and also the shield off struck,

doch ne wolder niht verzagen,
yet — would-he not despair,

wander was ein helt gût
for-he was a hero good

und het eines lewen mût.
and had a lion's spirit.

hern wolde im niht entwîchen.
he would to-him not give-way.

mit slegen freislîchen
with blows terrible

bestunt her den Troiân,
attacked he the Trojan,

der im daz leit hete getân:
who to-him the sorrow had done:

her hete ez gerne errochen,
he had it gladly avenged,

wan daz ez was versprochen,
but that it was forbidden,

daz ez niht solde wesen sô.
that it not should be so.

sîn swert hûb er vile hô
his sword raised he very high

und slûch den starken Troiân,
and struck the strong Trojan,

daz her niht langer mohte stân,
that he not longer might stand,

enebene an daz houbet,
squarely on the head,

daz her sô wart betoubet,
that he so became stunned,

daz der helt lussam
that the hero lovely

Ênêas ûf diu knie quam,
Aeneas onto the knees came,

wandes tete ime nôt:
for-it did to-him need:

her wâre ouch des slages tôt;
he were also of-the blow dead;

wan daz in generde
but that him saved

der veste helm und herde,
the firm helmet and hard,

der im ûf dem houbet lach,
which to-him on the head lay,

und ouch daz Turnô sîn swert brach
and also that to-Turnus his sword broke

uber ein spannen vor der hant:
over a span before the hand:

daz ervorhte der wîgant.
that feared the warrior.

Daz was sîn ungelucke.
That was his misfortune.

dô viel daz grôzer stucke
then fell the greater piece

des swerdes nider an daz gras.
of-the sword down onto the grass.

dô sprank der hêre Ênêas
then sprang the lord Aeneas

ze Turnô unde lief in ane:
to Turnus and ran him at:

dô mûster wîchen hin dane.
then must-he give-way away away.

Ênêas ime nâch lief,
Aeneas to-him after ran,

lûte her in ane rief,
loudly he him at called,

als im sîn stolzheit geriet:
as to-him his pride counseled:

‚man gesiget fliende niet,‘
‚one triumphs fleeing not,‘

sprach Ênêas wider Turnûm.
spoke Aeneas to Turnus.

‚wil dû nû fromechlîchen tûn
‚wilt thou now valiantly do

unde belîben an den êren,
and remain in the honors,

sô salt dû her wider kêren,
so shalt thou hither back turn,

ob dû behalden wil daz lant.‘
if thou keep wilt the land.‘

Turnûs dâ vor ime vant
Turnus there before him found

einen michelen stein.
a great stone.

dâ sîn manheit ane schein.
where his manhood on shone.

nâch dem greif her in daz gras:
after it grasped he into the grass:

dô ime daz swert zebrochen was,
when to-him the sword broken was,

daz herde was unde scharf,
which hard was and sharp,

mit dem steine her dô warf
with the stone he then threw

Ênêam den Troiân,
Aeneas the Trojan,

daz her kûme moht gestân
that he scarcely might stand

und ouch ein teil besnebete.
and also a part stumbled.

die wîle daz her lebete
the while that he lived

Turnûs der jungelink
Turnus the youngling

so begienk her manlîchiu dink.
so performed he manly things.

Der herzoge Ênêas,
The duke Aeneas,

wander gewâfent wole was,
for-he armed well was,

so bestunt her aber Turnûm.
so attacked he again Turnus.

her wolde im grôzen schaden tûn,
he would to-him great harm do,

wanderz wâfen het und die kraft:
for-he-it weapon had and the strength:

do vant Turnûs einen halben schaft
then found Turnus a half shaft

vor im ligen in dem gras,
before him lie in the grass,

der dâ vore sîn was,
which there before his was,

dô her Ênêam stach
when he Aeneas thrust

in sînen schilt daz her zebrach.
in his shield that it broke.

Turnûs der mâre wîgant
Turnus the famous warrior

den schaft begreif her mit der hant,
the shaft grasped he with the hand,

wander des lîbes gerde.
for-he of-the life desired.

mit dem schafte her sich werde
with the shaft he himself defended

die wîle und daz mohte wesen.
the while and that might be.

hern mohte aber niht genesen
he might but not survive

vor dem starken Troiân,
before the strong Trojan,

hern moht im niht widerstân
he might to-him not withstand

unde enliez in niht gehirmen.
and let him not rest.

ouch ne mohter niht geschirmen
also — might-he not fence

vor dem swerde daz her trûch.
before the sword which he bore.

den diechschenkel her im abe slûch:
the thigh-shank he to-him off struck:

dô mûster vallen dorch nôt,
then must-he fall through need,

want dô nâhete im der tôt.
for then neared to-him the death.

Des frowete sich Ênêas,
Of-that rejoiced himself Aeneas,

daz ez alsô komen was,
that it so come was,

daz Turnûs der tûre degen
that Turnus the precious warrior

vor im alsô was gelegen,
before him so was laid,

daz her im niht moht getûn.
that he to-him nothing might do.

der Troiân sprach wider Turnûm
the Trojan spoke to Turnus

‚wil dû mir noch lâzen diz lant?'
‚wilt thou to-me still leave this land?'

‚jâ hêre (sprach der wîgant),
‚yea lord (spoke the warrior),

habet û lant unde wîb
have to-you land and woman

und lâzet ôt mir den lîb
and let just to-me the life

als einen martirâre leben.
as a martyr live.

irn wellet mir den lîb geben,
unless-you will to-me the life give,

sone mach ich sîn haben niht,
so may I of-it have nothing,

alsô man nû wol gesiht.
as one now well sees.

des tût daz û gevalle,
of-that do what you pleases,

den gewalt habt ir betalle,
the power have you wholly,

daz mûz mir leider ane schînen.
that must to-me alas on shine.

ich hân frouwen Lavînen
I have lady Lavinia

engolden alze sêre,
paid all-too sorely,

daz ich lîb und êre
that I life and honor

dorch ir willen hân verloren'
for her sake have lost'

sprach der helt wol geboren.
spoke the hero well born.

,swie mirz komen sî iedoch,
,however to-me-it come be yet,

ich sterbe ungerne noch,
I die unwillingly still,

want neheiner slahte nôt
for no kind-of distress

is sô grimme sô der tôt.‘
is so grim as the death.‘

Do erbarmdez dem Troiân,
Then pitied-it to-the Trojan,

daz Turnûs der edel man
that Turnus the noble man

alsô klagelîchen sprach.
so lamentably spoke.

barmechlîche in ane sach
pityingly him at looked

der herzoge Ênêas,
the duke Aeneas,

wande Turnûs was
for Turnus was

ein edel vorste wol geboren,
a noble prince well born,

ze allen tugenden ûz erkoren.
to all virtues out chosen.

dorch daz woldern lâzen leben
for that would-he-him let live

unde wolde ime geben
and would to-him give

fride und sîne holde
peace and his favor

und gûtes swaz her wolde,
and of-goods whatever he would,

beidiu borge unde lant
both castles and land

unde schaz unde gewant.
and treasure and clothing.

Turnus's Death, and the Wedding Set

LIV

Aeneas means to spare Turnus, but he sees the gold ring he had given Pallas, which Turnus took when he killed him, and strikes off his head to avenge Pallas. Turnus is mourned and praised. Aeneas claims Lavinia, but on his men's counsel the wedding is set fourteen nights away. Lavinia frets that he rode to his quarters without seeing her; he gives lavishly, then lies awake regretting that he did not see her and set the day so far off. At dawn he invites the princes, asks to see Lavinia, and Latinus welcomes him.

Her wolde ime genâdich sîn,
He would to-him gracious be,

wan ein unsâlich vingerlîn,
but an unblessed little-ring,

daz Turnûs Pallante nam,
which Turnus from-Pallas took,

als im ubile gezam,
as to-him ill befitted,

sô tugentrîche sô her was.
so virtue-rich as he was.

daz vingerlîn het Ênêas
the little-ring had Aeneas

dem jungen Pallante gegeben.
to-the young Pallas given.

dô im Turnûs nam daz leben,
when from-him Turnus took the life,

dô nam herm ouch daz vingerlîn:
then took he-from-him also the little-ring:

daz mûste dô sîn schade sîn,
that must then his harm be,

wander bleib dar umbe tôt.
for-he remained there about dead.

do her Ênêê sîn hende bôt
when he to-Aeneas his hands offered

und wolde werden sîn man
and would become his man

und Ênêas den mût gewan,
and Aeneas the spirit won,

daz hern ze manne wolde enphân:
that he-him as man would receive:

dô ersach der Troiân
then saw the Trojan

daz goldîne vingerlîn.
the golden little-ring.

her sprach ‚ez mûz al anders sîn,
he spoke ‚it must all otherwise be,

hien mach sûne niht geschehen:
here may reconciliation not happen:

ich hân daz vingerlîn ersehen,
I have the little-ring seen,

daz ich Pallante gab,
which I to-Pallas gave,

den dû fromdest in daz grab
whom thou sentest into the grave

und im tâte den tôt,
and to-him didst the death,

des ne was dir nehein nôt,
of-that — was to-thee no need,

daz dû sîn vingerlîn trûge,
that thou his little-ring wore,

den dû in mîner helfe slûge:
whom thou in my help slew:

ez was ein bôsiu girheit.
it was an evil greed.

des sage ich dir die wârheit,
of-that tell I to-thee the truth,

nû mûstû sîn engelden.
now must-thou of-it pay.

ichn wil dich niht schelden
I will thee not revile

noch niht mêr zû sprechen:
nor any more to speak:

Pallas sal ich rechen,
Pallas shall I avenge,

der reiner tugende hete genûch'.
who of-pure virtues had enough'.

daz houbet her im abe slûch.
the head he to-him off struck.

Dô Turnûs lach erslagen,
When Turnus lay slain,

dô wart daz weinen und daz klagen
then became the weeping and the lament

von sînen frunden vile grôz.
from his friends very great.

wande nehein sîn genôz
for no his fellow

mêr tugende nie gewan,
more virtues never won,

wie her wâre ein heidensch man.
however he were a heathen man.

doch daz her dâ was belegen,
yet that he there was laid,

her was des lîbes ein degen,
he was of-the body a warrior,

kûne unde mahtich,
bold and mighty,

wîse unde bedahtich,
wise and considerate,

getrouwe unde wârhaft,
faithful and truthful,

milde unde êrhaft,
generous and honorable,

ein adelar sînes gûtes,
an eagle of-his goods,

ein lewe sînes mûtes,
a lion of-his spirit,

ein ekkestein der êren,
a cornerstone of-the honors,

ein spiegel der hêren.
a mirror of-the lords.

her hete wol getânen lîb,
he had well made body,

vil lieb wâren im diu wîb,
very dear were to-him the women,

si wâren ouch ime holt:
they were also to-him devoted:

daz was sîner tugende scholt.
that was of-his virtue's cause.

her hete in sîner jugende
he had in his youth

ûz erwelder tugende
out of-chosen virtue

wol zehener sîner gnôze teil,
well tenfold of-his fellows' share,

wan daz klagelîch unheil,
save that lamentable misfortune,

daz her des tages veige was
that he of-the day doomed was

unde daz her Ênêas
and that sir Aeneas

sîn lîb danne solde tragen,
his life then should carry,

Turnûs het anders in erslagen.
Turnus had otherwise him slain.

Dô daz alsô komen was,
When that so come was,

dô manete Ênêas
then reminded Aeneas

den kunich sînes eides.
the king of-his oath.

hern daht deheines leides,
he thought of-no sorrow,

daz liez her wole schînen,
that let he well appear,

her iesch frowen Lavînen,
he demanded lady Lavinia,

diu im lieb was sô der lîb.
who to-him dear was as the body.

her woldes machen sîn wîb,
he would-her make his woman,

ez was aber dô ze spâte.
it was but then too late.

si worden des ze râte,
they became of-that to counsel,

der kunich und Ênêas,
the king and Aeneas,

als ez ir manne rât was,
as it their men's counsel was,

daz si den strît zerbrâchen
that they the fight broke-off

und ein tagedink sprâchen
and a court-day spoke

uber vierzehen naht dar nâch.
over fourteen nights there after.

doch daz im wâre vile gâch,
yet that to-him were very hasty,

si rieten ime daz her beite,
they counseled to-him that he waited,

unze her sich baz bereite
until he himself better prepared

und sîn wîb danne nâme,
and his woman then took,

als ez kunege wol gezâme,
as it to-kings well befitted,

unde brûte in êre.
and marry in honor.

dô volgete her ir lêre,
then followed he their teaching,

dô ez in alsô lieb was.
when it to-them so dear was.

der herzoge Ênêas
the duke Aeneas

ze herbergen her dô reit
to lodgings he then rode

und hete michel arbeit
and had great hardship

erliden an deme tage.
suffered on the day.

daz liez her allez âne klage.
that let he all without lament.

Dô Lavîne daz vernam
When Lavinia that heard

diu junkfrouwe lussam,
the young-lady lovely,

daz Turnûs erslagen was
that Turnus slain was

und der hêre Ênêas
and the lord Aeneas

ze herbergen was geriten,
to lodgings was ridden,

unde sie hete vermiten,
and her had avoided,

daz her sie niene sach,
that he her not-at-all saw,

daz was ir leit und ungemach
that was to-her sorrow and discomfort

und was dâ von vil unfrô.
and was there from very unglad.

si sprach ,wie fûget sich diz sô,
she spoke ,how befits itself this so,

daz der edele Troiân
that the noble Trojan

sus ungefûchlîch hât getân,
so unfittingly has done,

daz her mich niene gesiht?
that he me not-at-all sees?

desn getrouwetich im niht,
of-that trusted-I to-him not,

ob sîn dink wole quâme,
if his thing well should-come,

daz her mîn niht war nâme,
that he of-me not heed took,

ob im got genâte,
if to-him God was-gracious,

daz her mich versmâte.
that he me scorned.

her denket lîhte in sînem mût:
he thinks perhaps in his spirit:

lebe dir sanfte, ez is dir gût,
live for-thyself gently, it is for-thee good,

lâ dir sîn niht ze gâch,
let to-thee be not too hasty,

du gesihst si dicke her nâch.
thou seest her often here after.

ich erkenne leider wol den sin,
I know alas well the sense,

daz ich im ummâre bin
that I to-him indifferent am

und smâher denne her mir sî,
and more-scorned than he to-me be,

want mîn herze is niht sô frî.'
for my heart is not so free.'

Des tages het der Troiân
Of-the day had the Trojan

sînen willen wol getân,
his will well done,

daz liez her wole schînen
that let he well appear

den fremeden und den sînen:
to-the strangers and to-the his-own:

alle die des gerûchten,
all who of-it deigned,

daz si sîne gnâde sûchten,
that they his grace sought,

arme und ouch rîche,
poor and also rich,

die gewerde er mildechlîche,
them granted he generously,

her gab mit williger hant
he gave with willing hand

beidiu schaz unde gewant,
both treasure and clothing,

ros unde wâfen.
horses and weapons.

ê her sich legete slâfen,
ere he himself laid sleep,

alsô sprach der Troiân
so spoke the Trojan

‚die gote hânt wol ze mir getân,
‚the gods have well to me done,

ich wil nâch mînem willen geben,
I will after my will give,

ichn trouwe diz gût niht uberleben.‘
I trust this good not outlive.‘

Dô Ênêas der degen
When Aeneas the warrior

an sînem bette was gelegen
on his bed was laid

frô unde wol gemeit,
glad and well joyful,

ez wâre im lieb oder leit,
it were to-him dear or grievous,

her mûste wachen al die naht.
he must wake all the night.

diu Minne liez im ir maht
the Love let to-him her might

vil unsanfte schînen,
very ungently shine,

wander frowen Lavînen
for-he lady Lavinia

des âbendes niht hete gesehen.
of-the evening not had seen.

done dorfte im leider nie geschehen.
then needed to-him worse never happen.

mit zorne sprach der Troiân
with wrath spoke the Trojan

‚waz hân ich bôse man getân,
‚what have I evil man done,

daz ich Lavînen niene gesach,
that I Lavinia not-at-all saw,

diu mir allez ungemach
who to-me all discomfort

ze gûtem ende habet braht,
to good end has brought,

mit der helfe ich sigete dô ich vaht,
with whose help I triumphed when I fought,

diu mir ernerde den lîb
who to-me saved the life

und diu mir is vor alliu wîb
and who to-me is before all women

und der ich bin vor alle man?
and to-whom I am before all men?

als schiere als ich den sige gewan,
as quickly as I the victory won,

daz ich zû ir niene reit,
that I to her not-at-all rode,

daz was ein michel bôsheit
that was a great wickedness

unde sal mich immer rouwen.
and shall me ever rue.

si beginnet mir missetrouwen
she begins me to-mistrust

und gedenket ubile dar zû
and thinks ill there to

und is ouch reht daz sie ez tû.‘
and is also right that she it do.‘

Her sprach ‚ich armer mûdink,
He spoke ‚I poor fool,

daz ich diz lange tagedink
that I this long court-day

dorch ieman gelobete!
for anyone vowed!

ichn weiz ob ich tobete,
I-not know if I raved,

daz ichz ie machete sô lank:
that I-it ever made so long:

des habe ich immer undank,
of-that have I ever ill-thanks,

daz ich sô ubile was bedaht.
that I so ill was minded.

mich soln dise vierzên naht
me shall these fourteen nights

langer dunken denne ein jâr.
longer seem than a year.

daz beiten dunket mich vil swâr,
the waiting seems to-me very heavy,

daz ich nû wol sprechen mach.
that I now well speak may.

waz wîzet mir der tach,
what blames me the day,

daz her niene wil komen?
that it not-at-all will come?

wer hât der sunnen benomen
who has from-the sun taken

ir ûfgên unde ir schîn?
her up-going and her shine?

wie lange wil ez naht sîn?‘
how long will it night be?‘

Ênêas der mâre,
Aeneas the famous,

swie mûde ers tages wâre,
however weary he-of-the day were,

her wachete die naht dar zû
he waked the night there to

unze des morgens frû,
until in-the morning early,

daz diu nahtigale rief.
that the nightingale called.

ein wênich her dô enslief,
a little he then slept,

unz daz erlûhte der tach.
until that lit the day.

niht langer her dô lach,
no longer he then lay,

her hiez im bringen sîn gewant
he bade to-him bring his clothing

unde kleidet sich ze hant,
and clothed himself at hand,

Ênêas der rîche,
Aeneas the rich,

und gienk dô frôlîche
and went then joyfully

dar ûz vor sîne man,
there out before his men,

mit den her sprechen began.
with whom he to-speak began.

Sîne boten her sande
His messengers he sent

mit briefen after lande
with letters through land

ze allen den rîchen,
to all the realms,

diu man dô mohte erstrîchen
which one then might reach

mit schiffen oder berîten.
with ships or ride-to.

ze sînen hôhgezîten
to his high-feasts

ladeter die vorsten unde bat
invited-he the princes and asked

ze Laurente zû der stat.
to Laurentum to the town.

Ênêas der mâre
Aeneas the famous

enbôt offenbâre,
sent-word openly,

daz her brûten solde,
that he marry should,

swer gût umb êre wolde,
whoever goods for honor would,

daz her frôlîch quâme
that he joyfully should-come

und es sô vile nâme,
and of-it so much took,

daz ez im iemer mohte fromen
that it to-him ever might profit

und allen sînen nâchkomen.
and all his descendants.

selbe der kunich Latîn
self the king Latinus

sande ouch die boten sîn,
sent also the messengers his,

her mande frunt unde man.
he reminded friends and men.

daz mâre wassen began.
the tidings to-grow began.

dô manz wîten vernam,
when one-it widely heard,

michel werlt dare quam.
great world thither came.

Dar nâch tete Ênêas
There after did Aeneas

alsô dô site was:
as then custom was:

her oppherde sînen goten.
he offered to-his gods.

ze Laurente sander boten
to Laurentum sent-he messengers

dem kunige Latîne,
to-the king Latinus,

daz her die maget Lavîne
that he the maiden Lavinia

sîne tohter wolde sehen.
his daughter would see.

daz mûste alsô geschehen.
that must so happen.

do enbôt im der kunich mâre,
then sent-word to-him the king tidings,

daz her willekomen wâre
that he welcome were

ze sînem eigenem hûs.
to his own house.

do enbôt ouch Latînûs
then sent-word also Latinus

sîner tohter dâ si was,
to-his daughter where she was,

si wolt der hêre Ênêas
her would the lord Aeneas

in korzer stunt gesehen,
in short hour see,

daz ir vil lieb was geschehen.
that to-her very dear was happened.

Aeneas Visits Lavinia

LV

Aeneas rides into Laurentum with fifty richly dressed knights, through streets hung with silk. Latinus leads him to Lavinia, and they kiss, sit together, and promise each other love. He gives her a ring, kisses her three times, commends her to her mistress, and sends gifts to all the ladies. The old queen, mad with rage, curses her daughter for Turnus's death and her husband for giving the realm to Aeneas.

Dô kleidete sich Ênêas.
Then clothed himself Aeneas.

wander ein edel vorste was,
for-he a noble prince was,

vil rîche des gûtes
very rich of-the goods

und frô sînes mûtes,
and glad of-his mind,

dar nâch zierde her sich.
there after adorned he himself.

sîn gwant daz was hêrlîch,
his garment it was lordly,

wand im lieb was diu vart.
for to-him dear was the journey.

sô nie nehein keiser wart,
as never no emperor was,

kristen noch heiden,
christian nor heathen,

den ich drûz welle scheiden,
whom I there-out will distinguish,

daz gwant, daz Ênêas trûch,
the garment, which Aeneas wore,

ez wâre hêrlîch genûch
it were lordly enough

und er mohtez wole tragen
and he might-it well wear

an den ôsterlîchen tagen
on the Easter days

ze grôzen hôhgezîten.
at great high-feasts.

her hiez mit ime rîten
he bade with him ride

funfzich ritter wol getân,
fifty knights well made,

schône unde lobesam
fair and praiseworthy

nâch wârheit niht nâch wâne,
after truth not after supposing,

al meiste Troiâne
all most Trojans

und der von dem lande,
and those of the land,

wol gezieret mit gewande
well adorned with clothing

und vil ritterlîche,
and very knightly,

wand si wâren rîche
for they were rich

unde habeten stade gûte
and had means good

an der habe und an dem mûte.
in the property and in the mind.

des fûrden die gesellen
of-that carried the companions

die zieren wât phellen,
the splendid garment silk-cloths,

nûwes gescrôten,
newly cut,

manegen samît rôten,
many-a samite red,

purpur unde grûne:
purple and green:

die heten die helide kûne
them had the heroes bold

gemachet als man dô phlach.
made as one then was-wont.

ich hôrde sagen daz der tach
I heard tell that the day

dâ von wâre worden lieht:
there from were become bright:

vor wâr ne weiz ich des nieht.
for true — know I of-it not.

Michel zierde dâ was,
Great adornment there was,

daz die blûmen und daz gras
that the flowers and the grass

dâ verschinen varlôs,
there paled colorless,

dô man den liehten schîn kôs
when one the bright shine saw

in manechvarwen sîden
in many-colored silk

an borden und an gesmîden
on braids and on smithwork

und an den liehten gimmen.
and on the bright gems.

man hiez mit hôhen stimmen
one bade with high voices

die vordern in rîten.
the foremost in ride.

zû den selben zîten
at the same times

12845 reit der hêre Ênêas
rode the lord Aeneas

ze Laurente als im lieb was
to Laurentum as to-him dear was

mit hêrlîchem gedrange,
with lordly throng,

mit phîfen und mit gesange,
with pipes and with singing,

mit trumben und mit seitspile.
with trumpets and with string-play.

12850 grôzer froude was dâ vile.
of-great joy was there much.

Dô frowete sich der Troiân.
Then rejoiced himself the Trojan.

die porten worden im ûf getân,
the gates became to-him up done,

daz her in solde rîten.
that he in should ride.

her sach ze beiden sîten
he saw on both sides

12855 einen wech vil langen
a way very long

mit phelle behangen:
with silk-cloth hung:

her sach dâ sitzen unde stân
he saw there sit and stand

manege maget wol getân
many-a maiden well made

und manech wol getânez wîb,
and many-a well made woman,

die wol heten ir lîb
who well had their body

gezieret nâch ir lantsiten.
adorned after their land's-manners.

die hobischâre kaffende riten
the courtiers gaping rode

beidenthalben der strâzen:
on-both-sides of-the street:

ir leides sie vergâzen.
of-their sorrow they forgot.

dô sprach ein hobischâre;
then spoke a courtier;

wâ korzwîle wâre
where pastime were

bezzer dan an dem velde?
better than on the field?

‚wir haben der gezelde
‚we have the tents

gehûtet nû vil manegen tach,
guarded now very many-a day,

daz uns sîn wol verdriezen mach.
that us of-it well weary may.

mich dunket, soldich hie wesen,
me seems, should-I here be,

ich wâre immer genesen;
I were ever saved;

solde ich hie lange bouwen,
should I here long dwell,

des mach man mir wol getrouwen.‘
of-that may one me well trust.‘

Dô erbeizete Ênêas
Then dismounted Aeneas

vor des kuniges palas
before the king's palace

und gienk dâ her den kunich vant.
and went where he the king found.

Latînûs nam in bî der hant
Latinus took him by the hand

und fûrde in dâ sîn tohter was.
and led him where his daughter was.

her gebôt daz Ênêas
he commanded that Aeneas

sîne tohter kuste,
his daughter kissed,

des sie vil wol geluste,
of-which her very well lusted,

wandez in beiden lieb was.
for-it to-them both dear was.

ez hete gerne Ênêas
it had gladly Aeneas

ân des kuneges bete getân.
without the king's bidding done.

Lavînjâ und der Troiân
Lavinia and the Trojan

ze samene sie gesâzen,
to gathering they sat,

ir leides sie vergâzen
of-their sorrow they forgot

mit frouden unde mit gûte.
with joys and with good.

in was beiden wol ze mûte,
to-them was both well in mind,

ir froude mûst dâ schînen.
their joy must there shine.

Ênêas sprach ze Lavînen,
Aeneas spoke to Lavinia,

der gefroute Troiân
the gladdened Trojan

‚junkfrowe, ir habet ze mir getân,
‚young-lady, you have to me done,

daz ich û immer dienen wil.
that I you ever serve will.

des liebes aber is sô vil,
of-the joy but is so much,

daz ichz verdienen niene mach
that I-it earn not-at-all may

unz an mînen jungesten tach,
until to my last day,

und soldich leben tûsent jâr.‘
and should-I live thousand years.‘

»wolde got, und wâre ez wâr.«
»would God, and were it true.«

‚jâ, frouwe, ez is alsô.‘
‚yea, lady, it is so.‘

»des bin ich zwâre vile frô.«
»of-that am I truly very glad.«

‚frowe, des lône û got.‘
‚lady, for-that reward you God.‘

»ich meinez (sprach si) sunder spot.«
»I mean-it (spoke she) without mockery.«

,Mir is vil wol (sprach Ênêas)
,To-me is very well (spoke Aeneas)

gesenftet, dâ mir wê was
softened, where to-me woe was

die wîle daz ich ûch vermeit.‘
the while that I you avoided.‘

»daz was ouch mir vile leit.«
»that was also to-me very grievous.«

,desne was nehein rât.‘
,of-that was no remedy.‘

»so vergebe ich û die missetât.«
»so forgive I you the misdeed.«

,ezn̥e sal nû niht mê sîn.‘
,it shall now not more be.‘

»daz is ouch der wille mîn.«
»that is also the will mine.«

,wir soln uns, frouwe, dicke sehen.‘
,we shall us, lady, often see.‘

si sprach »daz mûz̥e alsô geschehen.«
she spoke »that may so happen.«

,ez̥ tût, solen wir leben.‘
,it does, shall we live.‘

»daz mûz̥e uns got beiden geben.«
»that may us God both give.«

Michel froude dâ was
Great joy there was

in des kuniges palas
in the king's palace

von sange und von seitspile.
from singing and from string-play.

dâ was ritâre vile,
there was of-knights many,

manech vorste rîche
many-a prince rich

saz dâ frôlîche
sat there joyfully

und redeten mit den frouwen.
and talked with the ladies.

sumelîche giengen schouwen
some went view

diu palas und die torne.
the palaces and the towers.

die daz tâten gerne,
who that did gladly,

si sâgen die kemenâten
they saw the chambers

hêrlîchen berâten
lordly furnished

mit sîdenen umbehangen
with silken hangings

breiten unde langen
broad and long

nûwe unde zierlîch.
new and elegant.

nidene was der esterîch
below was the pavement

mit tepichen gespreitet,
with carpets spread,

hêrlîche bereitet.
lordly prepared.

des jâhen diez gesâgen.
of-that avowed who-it saw.

ûf den tepechen lâgen
on the carpets lay

die kolter von samîte
the quilts of samite

von phelle und von dimîte.
of silk-cloth and of dimity.

lieht unde maneger vare.
bright and of-many color.

man nam dâ vil lutzel ware
one took there very little heed

ûf ein verblichen baldekîn
of a faded baldachin

und ûf kâteblatîn
and of ciclatoun

und ûf ein aldez gewant.
and of an old clothing.

des nûwen man sô vile vant,
of-the new one so much found,

daz man des alden vergaz,
that one of-the old forgot,

want daz nûwe zimet baz.
for the new befits better.

Dô sprâchete Ênêas
Then talked Aeneas

als vil sô ime lieb was
as much as to-him dear was

mit der frouwen rîchen
with the lady rich

vil harde minnechlîchen
very very lovingly

als in vil wole luste.
as them very well lusted.

gûtlîch her si kuste,
kindly he her kissed,

her gab ir ein goldîn vingerlîn
he gave to-her a golden little-ring

und bat si frôhes mûtes sîn,
and asked her of-glad mind be,

her kuste sie wol drîstunt
he kissed her well three-times

an ir minnechlîchen munt
on her lovely mouth

von liebe und dorch minne.
from joy and for love.

her sprach zir meisterinne
he spoke to-her mistress

offenlîche und unverholen
openly and unconcealed

‚lât û dis maget sîn bevolen,
‚let to-you this maiden be commended,

frouwe (sprach der Troiân),
lady (spoke the Trojan),

ir habet noch wol dar zû getân,
you have still well there to done,

ich râte û daz irz vollentût,
I counsel you that you-it fulfill,

wand ûwer lôn wirt vile gût.‘
for your reward becomes very good.‘

Dô grûzte her die frouwen.
Then greeted he the ladies.

dâ mohte man schouwen
there might one behold

manegen minnechlîchen lîb,
many-a lovely body,

beidiu magede unde wîb,
both maidens and women,

wol gezogen unde gêret,
well bred and honored,

wol gekleit und wol gelêret,
well clad and well taught,

ze werken und ze worden.
in works and in words.

manegen tûren borden
many-a precious braid

mohte man dâ schouwen,
might one there behold,

die trûgen die frouwen
which wore the ladies

wol mit golde genât
well with gold sewn

ûf die phellîne wât,
on the silken garment,

ûf samît unde ûf sîde.
on samite and on silk.

man sach dâ gût gesmîde
one saw there good smithwork

unde manegen edelen stein.
and many-a noble stone.

Ênêas wart des enein,
Aeneas became of-it at-one,

daz her ze herbergen reit.
that he to lodgings rode.

im volgete manech rîter gemeit.
to-him followed many-a knight glad.

Dô der hêre Ênêas
When the lord Aeneas

ze herbergen komen was
to lodgings come was

der rîche und der mâre,
the rich and the famous,

sîne kamerâre
his chamberlains

hiez her dare zû zim gân
bade he thither to him go

unde hiez bringen sân
and bade bring at-once

vingerlîn und bougen,
little-rings and bracelets,

sô nieman mit sînen ougen
as no-one with his eyes

bezzer dorfte schouwen.
better needed behold.

daz gab her den frouwen
that gave he to-the ladies

und ouch diu gûten vingerlîn,
and also the good little-rings,

diu niht dorften bezzer sîn,
which not needed better be,

wander was Lavînen holt.
for-he was to-Lavinia devoted.

her sande ein tûre houbetgolt
he sent a precious head-gold

irre meisterinne
to-her mistress

ze liebe und ze minne.
for joy and for love.

dar nâch sande Ênêas
there after sent Aeneas

sîn gâbe diu vil gût was
his gift which very good was

den frouwen allen sunder,
to-the ladies all apart,

want der was ein wunder
for of-them was a wonder

dâ ze kemenâten.
there in chambers.

des was wol berâten
of-that was well counseled

Ênêas der hêre,
Aeneas the lord,

daz her gût gab umb êre.
that he goods gave for honor.

Dô Ênêas der wîgant
When Aeneas the warrior

sîn kleinôde hete gesant
his jewels had sent

ze Laurente den frouwen
to Laurentum to-the ladies

und siz begonden schouwen,
and they-them began behold,

dô was ez lobebâre.
then was it praiseworthy.

schiere vernam daz mâre
quickly heard the tidings

diu alde kuneginne.
the old queen.

si was nâch ûz ir sinne
she was nearly out-of her senses

komen dorch den grôzen zorn:
come through the great wrath:

ir witze het si nâch verlorn,
her wits had she nearly lost,

si wart vil ubile getân.
she became very ill made.

ir tohter hiez si zû zir gân
her daughter bade she to her go

die junkfrouwen lussam.
the young-lady lovely.

dô diu maget dare quam,
when the maiden thither came,

dô sprach diu kunegin uber lût
then spoke the queen over loud

‚wie frô dû nû bist, ubel hût,
‚how glad thou now art, evil skin,

mînes herzen rouwen!
of-my heart's rue!

dû maht mir des getrouwen,
thou mayest me of-that trust,

mir is leit daz ich dich ie getrûch,
to-me is grievous that I thee ever bore,

daz ich dich niht ze tôde slûch,
that I thee not to death slew,

als schiere sô ich dich gewan,
as quickly as I thee won,

nû Turnûs der edele man
now Turnus the noble man

von dînen scholden is erslagen.
through thy guilt is slain.

ez mûz diu werlt wol alliu klagen,
it must the world well all lament,

daz dû worde ie geboren.
that thou wert ever born.

dorch dînen willen hât verloren
for thy sake has lost

vil manech man sînen lîb.
very many-a man his life.

daz ich ie wart dîns vater wîb,
that I ever became thy father's woman,

daz quam von unheile,
that came from misfortune,

daz ich im wart ze teile.‘
that I to-him became to share.‘

Aber sprach diu kuneginne
Again spoke the queen

mit grôzem unsinne
with great folly

und mit grimmem zorne
and with grim wrath

,ôwê ich verlorne,
,alas I lost-one,

daz ich den unnutzen man
that I the useless man

dînen vater ie gewan,
thy father ever won,

daz mir mit ime ie wart vergeben!
that to-me with him ever was given!

ichn sal ouch niht langer leben,
I shall also not longer live,

und mohte ich, ich enwolde,
and might I, I not-would,

sint daz ich sehen solde,
since that I see should,

daz dû und der Troiân
that thou and the Trojan

vor mir gekrônet soldet gân,
before me crowned should go,

daz doch schiere mûz wesen,
which yet quickly must be,

sone moht ich nimmer genesen,
so might I never recover,

daz gienge mir ûzer deme spil.
that would-go to-me out-of the game.

nû dîn vater lâzen wil
now thy father leave will

Ênêê sîn rîche,
to-Aeneas his realm,

her tût vil bôslîche,
he does very wickedly,

ich mohtez ubile gesehen.
I might-it ill see.

leide mûze û geschehen,
sorrow may to-you happen,

dir von ime und im von dir.‘
to-thee from him and to-him from thee.‘

»frouwe, wes engelden wir«
»lady, of-what pay we«

sprach Lavînjâ diu maget,
spoke Lavinia the maiden,

»daz ir den goten von uns klaget
»that you to-the gods of us lament

unde uns flûchet sô vil?
and us curse so much?

unheil habe swer ez wil!«
misfortune have whoever it will!«

The Wedding

LVI

Lavinia answers her mother that she thanks God for Aeneas, and the queen takes to her bed and dies. Aeneas is crowned king and Lavinia queen at a month-long feast where the princes and Aeneas give lavishly to the minstrels. The poet compares it to the feast at Mainz where Emperor Frederick knighted his sons, the greatest he has seen. Aeneas and Lavinia live in love.

»Frouwe,« sprach daz magedîn,
»Lady,« spoke the maiden,

»des dehein ander rât mach sîn,
»of-which no other remedy may be,

des mûz man sich getrôsten.
of-that must one oneself console.

ich lobe es got den hôsten,
I praise it to-God the highest,

daz her mich wole hât gewert,
that he me well has granted,

des ich lange hân gegert,
what I long have desired,

umb den edelen Troiân,
about the noble Trojan,

wande nie wart nehein man
for never was no man

der tugende sîn gelîche.
who of-virtues his like.

moht ich zehen kunichrîche
might I ten kingdoms

mit anderm man gewinnen,
with other man win,

ich mohte in niht geminnen,
I might him not love,

ich wolde kiesen ê den tôt.
I would choose sooner the death.

ir moget ûch mûwen âne nôt,
you may yourself trouble without need,

welt ir ûch sterben dorch den zorn,
(if)-will you yourself kill for the wrath,

frowe, sô habet ir verlorn
lady, so have you lost

ûwer lob und ûwern lîb.
your praise and your life.

nû tût als ein witzich wîb
now do as a wise woman

und bedenket ûch baz.
and bethink yourself better.

ieh râte û trouwelîche daz,
I counsel you faithfully that,

daz ir dorch zoren niene tût
that you for wrath not-at-all do

daz nieman ne dunke gût
what to-no-one — seems good

(sprach si), liebiu mûder mîn.«
(spoke she), dear mother mine.«

‚des mûzest dû unsâlich sîn'
‚of-that must thou unblessed be'

sprach diu kunegin dâ wider
spoke the queen there against

und viel an ir bette nider.
and fell onto her bed down.

mit grôzen rouwen si lach
with great rue she lay

ich ne weiz wie manegen tach,
I not know how many day,

unz ir der tôt inz herze quam,
until to-her the death into-the heart came,

der ir den lîb unsanfte nam.
which from-her the life ungently took.

Daz dô der hêre Ênêas
That then the lord Aeneas

gefrouwet unde gêret was,
gladdened and honored was,

daz liez her dô schînen,
that let he then shine,

und sach frowen Lavînen
and saw lady Lavinia

als dicke als in luste.
as often as him lusted.

her halste si und kuste,
he embraced her and kissed,

daz si von im gerne nam,
which she from him gladly took,

unz daz tagedink quam,
until the court-day came,

daz diu brûtlouft wart.
that the wedding was.

michel wart diu zûvart.
great was the arriving.

dar quâmen in allen sîten
thither came on all sides

die vorsten vile wîten
the princes very widely

in schiffen und an der strâzen
in ships and on the roads

und ritere ûzer mâzen.
and knights beyond measure.

Die spilman und diu gerende diet
The minstrels and the asking folk

die versûmden sich niet,
they neglected themselves not,

die werltlîchen lûte.
the worldly people.

daz tâten sie noch hûte;
that did they still today;

dâ solîch hôchzît wâre:
where such high-feast were:

gefrieschen sie daz mâre,
heard they the tidings,

si zogen allenthalben zô.
they drew everywhere to.

alsô tâten si ouch dô,
so did they also then,

die ez heten vernomen.
who it had heard.

si mohten gerne dar komen
they might gladly thither come

und vil frôlîche,
and very joyfully,

wan si dâ worden rîche,
for they there became rich,

alsô daz billîch was.
so that fitting was.

dô wart der hêre Ênêas
then was the lord Aeneas

ze kunige gekrônet.
as king crowned.

dô wart im wol gelônet
then was to-him well rewarded

aller sîner arbeit
for-all his hardship

mit schônem wîbe und rîcheit.
with beautiful woman and riches.

ze êren opherde er den goten,
for honors offered he to-the gods,

die im die vart dar enboten,
who to-him the journey thither commanded,

und lônde wol den sînen.
and rewarded well the his-own.

dô krônde man Lavînen
then crowned one Lavinia

zeiner kuneginne.
as-a queen.

sie was dô ir minne
she was then her love

komen ze gûtem ende
come to good end

ân alle missewende.
without all fault.

Michel was diu hôchzît
Great was the high-feast

und daz gestûle vile wît.
and the seating very wide.

hêrlîch man ez ane vienk.
lordly one it on began.

der kunich dô ze tische gienk
the king then to table went

und die vorsten edele,
and the princes noble,

ir ieslîch an sîn gesedele,
of-them each to his seat,

arme unde rîche
poor and rich

harde hêrlîche.
very lordly.

mit flîze dâ gedienet wart.
with diligence there served was.

dâ wart diu spîse niht gespart.
there was the food not spared.

der sich des flîzen wolde,
who himself of-that apply would,

daz her sagen solde,
that he tell should,

wie dâ gedienet wâre,
how there served were,

ez worde ein langez mâre,
it would-become a long tale,

wand als ich û hie sagen wil,
for as I to-you here tell will,

man gab in allen ze vil
one gave to-them all too much

ezzen unde trinken,
eating and drinking,

des ieman konde erdenken
of-which anyone could devise

und des ir herze gerde,
and of-which their heart desired,

wol man si des gewerde.
well one them of-that granted.

Dô si dô gesâzen
When they then sat

und frôlîche gâzen
and joyfully ate

vil wol nâch ir willen,
very well after their will,

dô was kleine stille,
then was little still,

der schal was alsô grôz,
the noise was so great,

daz ez die bôsen bedrôz.
that it the evil wearied.

dâ was spil unde sank,
there was play and song,

buhurt unde gedrank,
bohort and throng,

phîfen unde springen,
piping and leaping,

videlen unde singen,
fiddling and singing,

orgeln unde seitspil,
organ-playing and string-play,

maneger slahte froude vil.
of-many kind joy much.

der junge kunech Ênêas,
the young king Aeneas,

der dâ brûtigome was,
who there bridegroom was,

her bereite dô die spilman.
he provided then the minstrels.

der gâbe er selbe began,
the gift he self began,

wander was der hêrste,
for-he was the lordliest,

von diu hûb herz alêrste,
from that raised he-it first,

als ez kunege wol gezam.
as it to-kings well befitted.

swer dâ sîne gâbe nam,
whoever there his gift took,

dem ergiengez sâlichlîche,
to-him went-it blessedly,

wander was des rîche
for-he was of-it rich

sint unz an sîn ende
since until to his end

und fromete sînem kinde
and profited his child

die wîle daz ez mohte leben;
the while that it might live;

wander konde wole geben
for-he could well give

unde hete ouch daz gût,
and had also the goods,

dar zû den willigen mût.
there to the willing spirit.

Dar nâch die vorsten rîche
There after the princes rich

gâben vollechlîche,
gave fully,

ir ieslîch mit sîner hant,
of-them each with his hand,

daz tûre phellîne gewant,
the precious silken clothing,

golt und aller slahte schat,
gold and all kind-of treasure,

silber unde goltvat,
silver and gold-vessels,

mûle und ravîde,
mules and palfreys,

phelle und samîde
silk-cloths and samites

ganz und ungescrôten,
whole and uncut,

manegen bouch rôten,
many-a bracelet red,

dorchslagen goldîn,
pierced golden,

zobel unde harmîn
sable and ermine

gâben die vorsten,
gave the princes,

wan siz tûn getorsten.
for they-it do dared.

herzogen unde grâven
dukes and counts

den spilmannen sie gâven
to-the minstrels they gave

grôzlîchen unde sô,
greatly and so,

daz si dannen schieden frô
that they thence parted glad

und lob dem kunege sungen
and praise to-the king sang

ieslîch nâch sîner zungen.
each after his tongue.

Dâ was michel hêrschaft,
There was great lordship,

wunne unde wirtschaft,
bliss and hospitality,

iedoch klagete Ênêas
yet lamented Aeneas

daz ir sô wênich dâ was,
that of-them so few there was,

die sînes gûtes gerden.
who of-his goods desired.

einen mânôt werden
a month lasted

die selben hôhzîte,
the same high-feast,

daz man dâ gab ze strîte.
that one there gave in rivalry.

dâ wâren vorsten hêre,
there were princes lordly,

die dorch ir selber êre
who for their self honor

unde dorch den kunich gâven.
and for the king gave.

herzogen unde grâven
dukes and counts

und die kunege rîche
and the kings rich

die gâben hêrlîche,
they gave lordly,

die wênich ahten den schaden,
who little heeded the harm,

si gâben soumâr al geladen
they gave pack-horses all laden

mit schatze und mit gewande.
with treasure and with clothing.

ichn friesch in dem lande
I learned in the land

nie dehein hôhzît sô grôz,
never no high-feast so great,

wand ir maneger wol genôz.
for of-them many-a-one well profited.

Dâ von sprach man dô wîten.
There from spoke one then widely.

ichn vernam von hôhzîte
I-not heard of high-feast

in allen wîlen mâre,
in all whiles tidings,

diu alsô grôz wâre,
which so great were,

13225 alsam dô het Ênêas,
as then had Aeneas,

wan diu ze Meginze dâ was,
save that-which at Mainz there was,

die wir selbe sâgen,
which we self saw,

desn dorfen wir niet frâgen,
of-that need we not ask,

diu was betalle unmâzlîch,
that was wholly immeasurable,

13230 dâ der keiser Friderîch
where the emperor Frederick

gab zwein sînen sunen swert,
gave to-two his sons sword,

dâ manech tûsent marke wert
where many-a thousand marks' worth

verzeret wart und vergeben.
consumed was and given.

ich wâne alle die nû leben
I ween all who now live

13235 deheine grôzer haben gesehen.
no greater have seen.

ichn weiz waz noch sole geschehen,
I-not know what still shall happen,

desn kan ich ûch niht bereiten.
of-that can I you not inform.

ichn vernam von swertleiten
I heard of sword-givings

nie wârlîche mâre,
never true tidings,

dâ sô manech vorste wâre
where so many-a prince were

und aller slahte lûte.
and of-all kind people.

ir lebet genûch noch hûte,
of-them live enough still today,

diez wizzen wârlîche.
who-it know truly.

dem keiser Friderîche
to-the emperor Frederick

geschach sô manech êre,
happened so many-a honor,

daz man iemer mêre
that one ever more

wunder dâ von sagen mach
wonder there of tell may

unz an den jungisten tach,
until to the last day,

âne logene vor wâr.
without lie for true.

ez wirt noch uber hundert jâr
it is still over hundred years

von ime gesaget und gescriben,
of him told and written,

daz noch allez is beliben.
that still all is remained.

Nû soln wir û sagen mê,
Now shall we to-you tell more,

dâ wir die rede liezen ê.
where we the tale left ere.

dô der hêre Ênêas
when the lord Aeneas

gewaldiger kunich was,
mighty king was,

dô was geliebet im der lîb,
then was endeared to-him the life,

wander sîn vil schônez wîb
for-he his very beautiful woman

minnete nâch sînem willen
loved after his will

offenlîche unde stille
openly and quietly

und was ein kunich rîche
and was a king rich

und lebete hêrlîche.
and lived lordly.

des stunt sîn mût vile hô
of-that stood his spirit very high

und was sîn herze vile frô,
and was his heart very glad,

als ez wole mohte,
as it well might,

wand in daz selben dohte
for him that self seemed

vil bescheidenlîche;
very discerningly;

ob in ertrîche
if on earth-realm

niht mêr frouden wâre
no more joys were

dan der kunich mâre
than the king famous

eine in sînem mûte trûch,
alone in his mind bore,

daz ir al diu werlt hete gnûch,
that of-them all the world had enough,

ob her sie wolde teilen,
if he them would divide,

daz her dâ mit mohte heilen,
that he there with might heal,

alliu unfrôhiu herzen
all unglad hearts

von rouwechlîchem smerzen.
from rueful pain.

Nû dûhte frowen Lavînen
Now seemed to-lady Lavinia

die lieben brût sîne,
the dear bride his,

dô sie ir lieben man
when she her dear man

nâch ir willen gewan
after her will won

und trûte baz danne ir lîb,
and loved better than her body,

si dûhte daz alliu wîb
her seemed that all women

âne froude wâren,
without joy were,

die solher minne enbâren,
who such love forwent,

die si hete zaller zît
which she had at-all time

âne hûte und âne strît.
without guard and without strife.

Aeneas's Line, and the Poet's Epilogue

LVII

Latinus leaves Aeneas his realm. Aeneas builds Alba, rules Italy, and has a son, Silvius, born in a wood; from his line come Romulus and Remus, who found Rome, then Julius Caesar and Augustus, in whose time Christ was born. In the epilogue Veldeke tells how his unfinished book, lent to the countess of Cleves, was stolen at her wedding and sent to Thuringia by Count Henry, regained after nine years, and finished for Count Palatine Hermann and Count Frederick. He says the tale follows the French and Virgil's Latin.

Dô hielt der kunich Latîn
Then held the king Latinus

Ênêam vor den sun sîn,
Aeneas for the son his,

wand er unmahtich was und alt.
for he powerless was and old.

her gab im allen sînen gewalt,
he gave to-him all his power,

lant, borge unde man.
land, castles and men.

der hêre bouwen began
the lord to-build began

der nûwe kunich Ênêas
the new king Aeneas

eine borch dâ im lieb was:
a castle where to-him dear was:

diu was grôz unde wît.
it was great and wide.

vil wol her si in sîner zît
very well he it in his time

begrabete und bemûrde.
ditched and walled.

wie lutzel in des tûrde,
however little him of-it cost,

wander tete ez gerne.
for-he did it gladly.

her machete hôhe torne,
he made high towers,

veste und wol getâne.
firm and well made.

die borch hiez her Albâne,
the castle called he Alba,

als der kunech si nennen bat:
as the king it name asked:

daz was dô sîn houbetstat,
that was then his chief-town,

unz Latînûs verschiet.
until Latinus departed.

alsô saget uns daz liet.
thus tells us the song.

Sint het der kunech Ênêas
Since had the king Aeneas

daz lant als ez gelegen was
the land as it lying was

alliu îtâlschen rîche
all Italian realms

vil gewaldechlîche.
very mightily.

sînem sune Ascânjô her liez
to-his son Ascanius he left

die borch diu Albâne hiez
the castle which Alba was-called

und dar zû ein michel lant.
and there to a great land.

daz enphienk her von sîner hant
that received he from his hand

und nandez ein kunichrîche.
and named-it a kingdom.

si lebeten frôlîche
they lived joyfully

ichn weiz wie lange sint ensamen.
I-not know how long since together.

Ascânjûs hete zwêne namen:
Ascanius had two names:

an dem einen hiez her Ascânjûs,
by the one was-called he Ascanius,

an dem andern Jûlûs.
by the other Iulus.

Dô daz alsô komen was,
When that so come was,

daz der kunech Ênêas
that the king Aeneas

daz rîche eine gewan,
the realm alone won,

dô heter willich sîne man
then had-he willing his men

unde sîn vil schônez wîb:
and his very beautiful woman:

diu was im lieb sô der lîb,
who was to-him dear as the body,

wande sie braht in wol innen
for she brought him well aware

gûter trouwen unde minnen
of-good faith and love

als gût wîb ir lieben man.
as good woman her dear man.

einen sun her bî ir gewan
a son he by her won

der wart geheizen Silvîûs
who was called Silvius

und wart in neheime hûs
and was in no house

her wart in einem walde geboren,
he was in a wood born,

als in sîn vater dâ bevoren
as him his father there before

in der helle sehen liez,
in the hell see let,

und wart als her im gehiez
and became as he to-him promised

ein kunich vile hêre
a king very lordly

und gewan vil michel êre.
and won very great honor.

Silvjô volgete grôz heil,
To-Silvius followed great fortune,

wander hete ein michel teil
for-he had a great part

tugent an sînem lîbe.
virtue in his person.

her gewan an sînem wîbe
he won by his wife

einen sun der im lieb was,
a son who to-him dear was,

der hiez Silvjûs Ênêas.
who was-called Silvius Aeneas.

und wart rehte alsô getân
and was right so made

als Ênêas der Troiân
as Aeneas the Trojan

an hâre und an der hûte.
in hair and in the skin.

13350 daz markten die lûte,
that marked the people,

die si beide erkanden:
who them both knew:

an fûzen unde an handen
in feet and in hands

mohte manz wol merken
might one-it well mark

an worten unde an werken
in words and in works

13355 und uber allen sînen lîb.
and over all his body.

vil holt wâren im diu wîb.
very devoted were to-him the women.

von Ênêâ sînem anen
from Aeneas his forefather

von dem erbetez in ane.
from him inherited-it him on.

Von Silvjô Ênêâ quam
From Silvius Aeneas came

13360 ein kunne vile lobesam,
a kin very praiseworthy,

daz edele geslehte,
the noble lineage,

die mâren gûten knehte,
the famous good knights,

[von allen tugenden ûz erkoren,
[*out-of all virtues out chosen,*

von sînem kunne wart geboren]
from his kin was born]

ein hêre der hiez Rêmûs
a lord who was-called Remus

und sîn brûder Rômulûs,
and his brother Romulus,

die daz kunichrîche
who the kingdom

harde lobelîche
very praiseworthily

befrideten und berihten.
pacified and ordered.

Rôme sie dô stihten
Rome they then founded

die zwêne brûder ensant.
the two brothers together.

nâch Rômulô wart si genant
after Romulus was it named

und wart genennet Rômâ.
and was named Roma.

si worden vil gewaldech dâ
they became very mighty there

und hiezen Rômâre,
and were-called Romans,

si worden wîten mâre
they became widely famous

und gwunnen sô michel kraft,
and won so great strength,

daz si gemacheten zinshaft
that they made tributary

dar andriu kunichrîche.
there other kingdoms.

daz weiz man wârlîche.
that knows one truly.

Von dem kunne Rômulî
From the kin of-Romulus

und von Ascânjô Jûlî
and from Ascanius Iulus

wart ein hêre geboren
was a lord born

an allen tugenden ûz erkoren
in all virtues out chosen

under allen sînen mâgen,
among all his kinsmen,

die doch grôzer êren phlâgen,
who yet great honors kept,

daz was Jûljûs Cêsâr.
that was Julius Caesar.

daz mach man sagen vor wâr,
that may one say for true,

daz her der werlde vil betwank.
that he of-the world much compelled.

ez wâre ze sagene al ze lank,
it were to tell all too long,

waz her wunders worhte.
what he of-wonders wrought.

wîten man in vorhte,
widely one him feared,

sînen gewalt und sîn hervart,
his power and his campaign,

unze her erslagen wart
until he slain was

ze Rôme verrâten:
at Rome betrayed:

senâtôre ez tâten.
senators it did.

Dô erslagen wart Jûljûs,
When slain was Julius,

dô wart keiser Augustûs
then was emperor Augustus

dâ ze Rôme erkoren,
there at Rome chosen,

der von sînem kunne was geboren.
who of his kin was born.

der berihte daz rîche
he ordered the realm

harde hêrlîche
very lordly

und wart gewaldich wîten.
and became mighty widely.

ez wart bî sînen zîten
there was in his times

vil stâter fride unde gût,
very steadfast peace and good,

dâ vil wole wâren behût
where very well were guarded

witewen unde weisen
widows and orphans

vor unrehten freisen,
from wrongful perils,

arme unde rîche.
poor and rich.

done getorste unredelîche
then dared wrongfully

nieman dem andern niht getûn.
no-one to-the other nothing do.

bî des zîten wart der gotes sun
in whose times was the God's son

geboren ze Bethelehêm,
born at Bethlehem,

der sint gemartert wart ze Jersalêm
who since martyred was at Jerusalem

uns allen ze trôste,
to-us all for comfort,

wander uns erlôste
for-he us redeemed

ûz der freislîchen nôt,
out-of the terrible distress,

wandern êwigen tôt
for-he-the eternal death

mit sînem tôde ersterbete,
with his death killed,

den Âdâm an uns erbete.
which Adam to us bequeathed.

alsô hât her uns erlôst.
so has he us redeemed.

daz is uns ein michel trôst,
that is to-us a great comfort,

ob wirz selbe behalden.
if we-it self keep.

sîn gnâde sal es walden
his grace shall it rule

und sal uns gesterken
and shall us strengthen

an solîchen werken,
in such works,

als uns zer sêle gût sî.
as to-us for-the soul good be.

âmen in nomine dominî.
amen in name of-the-Lord.

[Nû solen wir enden diz bûch.
[Now shall we end this book.

ez dûht den meister genûch,
it seemed to-the master enough,

derz ûz der welsche kêrde,
who-it out-of the French turned,

ze dûte herz uns lêrde:
into German he-it us taught:

daz was von Veldeke Heinrîch.
that was of Veldeke Henry.

daz is gnûgen wizzenlîch,
that is to-many known,

daz herz tihten kunde.
that he-it compose could.

her hete ein lange stunde
he had a long while

daz mêrre teil getihtet,
the greater part composed,

in tûsche berihtet,
in German set,

unz daz der hêre Ênêas
until that the lord Aeneas

frowen Lavînen brief gelas,
lady Lavinia's letter read,

und woldez vollebringen.
and would-it complete.

do beleibz von einem dinge,
then remained-it from one thing,

her liez ez dorch einen zoren:
he left it through a wrath:

her hete daz bûchelîn verloren.
he had the little-book lost.

her liez ez einer frouwen
he left it to-a lady

ze lesene und ze schouwen,
to read and to behold,

ê danne manz wol schreve,
ere than one-it well wrote,

daz was diu grâvinne von Cleve
that was the countess of Cleves

diu milde und diu gûte
the generous and the good

mit dem frîen mûte,
with the free mind,

diu konde hêrlîche geben.
she could lordly give.

vil tugentlîch was ir leben,
very virtuous was her life,

als ez frouwen wol gezam.
as it to-ladies well befitted.

dô si der lantgrâve nam,
when her the landgrave took,

dô wart daz bûch ze Cleve verstolen
then was the book at Cleves stolen

einer frouwen, der ez was bevolen.
from-a lady, to-whom it was entrusted.

des wart diu grâvinne gram
of-that became the countess hostile

dem grâven Heinrîch, der ez nam
to-the count Henry, who it took

unde ez dannen sande
and it thence sent

ze Doringen heim ze lande.
to Thuringia home to land.

dâ wart daz mâre dô gescriben
there was the tale then written

anders dan obz im wâr bliben,
otherwise than if-it with-him had remained,

daz mach man sagen vor wâr.
that may one say for true.

sint was daz bûch niun jâr
since was the book nine years

meister Heinrîche benomen,
from-master Henry taken,

daz her dar nâch niht mohte komen,
that he there after not might come,

unz her quam ze Doringen in daz lant,
until he came to Thuringia into the land,

dâ her den phalinzgrâven vant
where he the count-palatine found

von Sassen, der im daz bûch liez
of Saxony, who to-him the book let

unde ez in volmachen hiez:
and it him complete bade:

wander ins bat und im ez riet,
for-he him-of-it asked and to-him it counseled,

her ne hete ez volmachet niet.
he not had it completed not.

he mûste ez ouch tûn
he must it also do

dorch lantgrâven Lodewîges sun.
for landgrave Louis's son.

volmachen herz ouch began
complete he-it also began

dorch den phalenzgrâven Herman
for the count-palatine Hermann

von der Nûwenborch bî der Unstrût,
of the Neuenburg by the Unstrut,

want diu rede dûhte in gût
for the tale seemed to-him good

und daz getihte meisterlîch.
and the poem masterly.

dô volbrahtez Heinrîch
then completed-it Henry

dorch sîn gebot und dorch sîn bete.
for his command and for his request.

wander im allen dienest tete,
for-he to-him all service did,

den her erdenken konde,
which he devise could,

und ez im wole gonde,
and it to-him well granted,

sint daz her sîn kunde gewan.
since that he his acquaintance won.

daz was der phalzgrâve Herman,
that was the count-palatine Hermann,

des lantgrâven Lodewîges brûder
the landgrave Louis's brother

von vater unde von mûder,
by father and by mother,

und der grâve Friderîch,
and the count Frederick,

dem diende gerne Heinrîch.]
to-him served gladly Henry.]

Ich hân gesaget rehte
I have told rightly

des hêren Ênêê geslehte
the lord Aeneas's lineage

und daz kunne lobesam,
and the kin praiseworthy,

daz sint von ime quam,
which since from him came,

gewaldech unde rîche.
mighty and rich.

si lebeten hêrlîche
they lived lordly

beidiu junk unde alt
both young and old

und heten grôzen gewalt
and had great power

in der werlde wîten.
in the world widely.

lange nâch sînen zîten
long after his times

wâren si kunege hêre
were they kings lordly

und heten michel êre,
and had great honor,

gewalt unde wunne
power and bliss

die von sînem kunne,
who of his kin,

daz is genûgen kuntlîch,
that is to-many known,

als ez dâ tihte Heinrîch,
as it there composed Henry,

derz ûzer welschen bûchen las,
who-it out-of French books read,

da ez von latîne getihtet was
where it from Latin composed was

al nâch der wârheide.
all after the truth.

diu bûch heizent Êneide,
the books are-called Aeneid,

diu Virgiljûs dâ von screib,
which Virgil there of wrote,

von dem uns diu rede bleib,
from whom to-us the tale remained,

der tôt is uber manech jâr.
who dead is over many-a year.

ne louch her niht, sô is ez wâr,
— lied he not, so is it true,

daz Heinrîch gemachet hât dernâch.
what Henry made has there-after.

im ne was zer rede niht sô gach,
to-him — was to-the tale not so hasty,

daz her von sîner scholde
that he through his guilt

den sin verderben wolde,
the sense ruin would,

sint daz her sichs underwant.
since that he himself-of-it undertook.

wand als herz dâ gescriben vant,
for as he-it there written found,

alsô hât herz vor gezogen,
so has he-it before drawn,

daz her anders niht hât gelogen,
that he otherwise nothing has lied,

wand als herz an den bûchen las.
save as he-it in the books read.

ob daz gelogen niene was,
if that lied not-at-all was,

sô wil her unscholdich sîn:
so will he guiltless be:

als is ez welsch und latîn
as is it French and Latin

âne missewende.
without fault.

hie sî der rede ein ende.
here be of-the tale an end.